



## ERS/EAACI Statement on severe exacerbations in asthma in adult: facts, priorities and key research questions

Journal:	<i>European Respiratory Journal</i>
Manuscript ID	ERJ-00900-2019.R2
Manuscript Type:	Task Force Report
Date Submitted by the Author:	15-Jul-2019
Complete List of Authors:	<p>Bourdin, Arnaud; CHU Arnaud de Villeneuve, Service des Maladies Respiratoires</p> <p>Bjermer, Leif; Lung and Allergy research Unit, Department of Respiratory Medicine and Allergy</p> <p>Brightling, Christopher; Institute for Lung Health, NIHR BRC Respiratory Medicine, University of Leicester, Department of Infection, Immunity and Inflammation</p> <p>Brusselle, Guy; Ghent University Hospital, Department of Respiratory Diseases</p> <p>Chanez, Pascal; University of Marseille,</p> <p>Chung, Kian Fan; Imperial College, National Heart &amp; Lung Institute</p> <p>Custovic, Adnan; Imperial College London, Department of Paediatrics ;</p> <p>Diamant, Zuzana; Skane University Hospital, Dept of Respiratory Medicine &amp; Allergology; QPS Netherlands, Respiratory and Allergy Research</p> <p>Djukanovic, Ratko; University Hospital Southampton NHS Foundation Trust</p> <p>Hamerlijnc, Dominique</p> <p>Tonia, Thomy; Institute of Social and Preventive Medicine, University of Bern, ;</p> <p>Johnston, Sebastian; Imperial College London, Department of Respiratory Medicine</p> <p>Kanniess, Frank</p> <p>Papadopolous, Nikos</p> <p>Papi, Alberto; University of Ferrara, Respiratory Medicine</p> <p>Russell, Richard; University of Leicester, Institute for Lung Health, NIHR Leicester Biomedical Research Centre, Department of Infection, Immunity and Inflammation</p> <p>Ryan, Dermot; University of Edinburgh, Allergy and Respiratory Research Group, Centre for Population Health Sciences; Woodbrook Medical centre,</p> <p>Samitas, Konstantinos; Athens Chest Hospital, 7th Resp. Med. Dept and Asthma Centre</p> <p>Zervas, Eleftherios; Athens Chest Hospital, 7th Respiratory Medicine Dept</p> <p>Gaga, Mina; Athens Chest Hospital Sotiria, 7th Respiratory Medicine Department</p>
Key Words:	asthma exacerbations

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Abstract:	Despite the use of effective medications to control asthma, severe exacerbations in asthma are still a major health risk and require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome such as hospitalization or death. Moreover, severe exacerbations are associated with substantial huge healthcare costs, and psychological burden including anxiety and fear for patients and their families. The European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS) set up a Task Force (TF) to search for a clear definition of severe exacerbations and to also define research questions and priorities. The statement includes comments from patients who were members of the TF.

SCHOLARONE™  
Manuscripts

## ERS/EAACI Statement on severe exacerbations in asthma in adult: facts, priorities and key research questions

A. Bourdin, L. Bjermer, C. Brightling, G. Brusselle, P. Chanez, F. Chung, A. Custovic, Z. Diamant, S Diver, R. Djukanovic, D. Hamerlijnc, S. Johnston, F. Kannies, N. Papadopoulos, A. Papi, R. Russell, D Ryan, K. Samitas, T. Thomy, E. Zervas, M Gaga.

### TASK-FORCE Sections and Members

Section no	Section title	Participants
<b>1</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	M. Gaga (leader), K. Samitas
<b>2</b>	<b>Triggers and risk factors</b>	A. Bourdin (leader)
2A	<i>Assessment of risk, What is cause and what is effect</i>	A. Bourdin
2B	<i>Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors &amp; Mathematical models</i>	F. Chung
2C	<i>Risk Factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes</i>	I. Horvath
2D	<i>Personality type – Gender, Psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/adherence</i>	L. Bjermer, F. Kannies
2E	<i>Virus / Allergens</i>	Z. Diamant, S. Johnston, R. Djukanovic
2F	<i>Environmental air pollution indoor/outdoor pollution &amp; occupational factors</i>	G. Brusselle, A. Papi
2G	<i>Drugs &amp; irritants / Overdose of <del>B2</del>-<math>\beta_2</math>-agonists</i>	P. Chanez
2H	<i>Interaction between different trigger factors</i>	N. Papadopoulos
<b>3</b>	<b>Acute Management</b>	E. Zervas (leader)
<b>4</b>	<b>Prevention</b>	C. Brightling (leader), Dermot Ryan, Richard Russell and Sarah Diver
<b>5</b>	<b>ELF Patient perspective</b>	D. Hamerlijnc, ELP Patient Advisory Group
	<b>ERS senior methodologist</b>	T. Tonia
	<b>Literature Search</b>	K. Samitas

**Summary**

Despite the use of effective medications to control asthma, severe exacerbations in asthma are still a major health risk and require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome such as hospitalization or death. Moreover, severe exacerbations are associated with substantial huge healthcare costs, and psychological burden including anxiety and fear for patients and their families. The European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS) set up a Task Force (TF) to search for a clear definition of severe exacerbations and to also define research questions and priorities. The statement includes comments from patients who were members of the TF.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Asthma is one of the most common chronic diseases and its worldwide prevalence has risen around 3-fold in recent decades [1]. With the recognition of the inflammatory nature of the disease and the introduction of inhaled corticosteroids, asthma control and the quality of life of asthma patients have substantially improved and many deaths have been prevented. Nevertheless, patients still face exacerbations of varying severity ranging from increased symptoms to life-threatening episodes. And any asthmatic patient may suffer severe exacerbation and even die from one. In fact, most exacerbations present in mild asthmatics, who are the majority of asthma sufferers [2, 3]. The causes leading to exacerbations may be exposure to a triggering agent, lack of or adherence to treatment, the inherent severity and hyperresponsiveness of the disease and may be affected by comorbidities. Severe exacerbations of asthma likely carry most of the burden of the disease through their immediate and delayed-associated risks. Severe exacerbations are exposing patients to immediate and delayed side effects of high doses of bronchodilators and systemic corticosteroids, and quite often to antibiotics. Absenteeism, presenteeism, care-associated risks if admitted (nosocomial infection for example), anxiety and many other issues are insufficiently describing the burden of severe exacerbations. Epidemiological data remain heterogeneous as very different definitions are used in cohorts and in clinical trials. For example, in TENOR II, 25.8% of the population reported a severe exacerbation [4]. In the MENSA study, among enrolled patients who reported  $3.5 \pm 2.2$  exacerbations before entering the study, 17 to 21% were admitted. During the trial, the mean rate of clinically significant exacerbation and exacerbation requiring admission fell to 1.74 and 0.10 respectively [5]. Unfortunately, asthma deaths still exist. Their rates are low and most of them are seen as preventable [6, 7] in westernized countries. This also implies that

1  
2  
3 some are not preventable, suggesting a place for new drugs to treat refractory episodes of near  
4  
5 fatal asthma.

6  
7 Accordingly, both the ERS and the EAACI elicited a task force in 2016 that aims to review the  
8  
9 most relevant research evidence and the current practice on definition, clinical identification of  
10  
11 severe exacerbations, triggers and risk factors, management and prevention. Subsequently, this  
12  
13 document does not contain recommendations for clinical practice but offers recommendations  
14  
15 for future research.  
16  
17  
18  
19

## 20 **Methodology**

21  
22 After the initial meetings the Task Force members decided to address four main research  
23  
24 questions related to serious exacerbations: 1) what are the available definitions for severe  
25  
26 exacerbations in asthmatics and what would be an accurate definition, 2) which are the trigger  
27  
28 factors related to the initiation and severity of exacerbations, 3) what is the best way to manage  
29  
30 severe exacerbations 4) and finally what is the best strategy to prevent them. Specific keywords  
31  
32 and MeSH-terms were identified based on several key-references provided by the Task Force  
33  
34 members, and the corresponding literature search was initiated for all sections using the  
35  
36 MEDLINE and CENTRAL (Cochrane Library) Databases. Search results were extracted in .txt  
37  
38 file formats and imported in a specially designed reference management software (Reference  
39  
40 Manager Version 12) in order to screen for duplicates. Further processing of the search results  
41  
42 was made in a step-wise approach (as shown in the supplementary file flow-charts) based on  
43  
44 the title, the abstract, and finally after reading the whole text, filtering for date (2000 and  
45  
46 onwards), age (adults only), language (only English), and type (included: randomized and  
47  
48 observational studies and systematic reviews/meta-analyses, excluded: case reports and letters  
49  
50 to the editor). All articles remaining after final processing for each section were sent back to  
51  
52 the corresponding TF members for final evaluation (corresponding flow charts are available as  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 a supplementary file). From this sorting of the relevant literature, leaders of the four sections  
4  
5 drafted a first version and each statement was kept or removed if any concern was expressed  
6  
7 and no consensus could be found. During the subsequent dedicated meetings, research needs  
8  
9 were identified and tables and figures were reviewed.  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## 2. Definition of severe exacerbations of asthma

Asthma severity and control have more or less been defined and graded over the years so that the definitions are equally understood by all stakeholders [3, 8–10]. This is not yet the case for asthma exacerbations where exacerbations are defined as episodes characterized by more or less rapid increase in symptoms, sufficient to require a change in treatment [3, 11]. Severe exacerbations are usually defined based on use of systemic, usually oral corticosteroids (OCS), emergency care visits and/or hospitalizations [1], while in some clinical studies reductions in lung function (peak expiratory flow [~~PEFR~~PEF] or forced expiratory volume in one second [FEV<sub>1</sub>]) of more than 20 or 30% have also been included in the definition. (Table 1) It must be noted that patient perception and easy access to rescue corticosteroids and emergency care facilities may confound the definition and so may the retrospective collection of data. The ERS/ATS statement on exacerbations released in 2009 [12] defines severe exacerbations as events that require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome, i.e. hospitalization or death. However, there is subjectivity in the perception of severity and moreover, many studies have shown that the risk of severe exacerbation is associated with a multitude of factors. These factors include (1) the level of asthma control, (2) asthma severity based on ERS/ATS definition [3], (3) lung function, (4) the presence of comorbidities, (5) the psychosocial status (to assess the ability to seek help in case of clinical worsening), (6) previous history of near fatal attacks and (7) response to treatment. Such factors seem important to guide treatment decisions and, importantly, decisions regarding hospitalizations. Moreover, prediction models assessing future risk of exacerbations in adult asthma patients have been proposed, such as the one published by Miller et al, based on the TENOR cohort [13]. However, the applicability of such models has not been examined in large studies and needs to be assessed prospectively. Composite scores have been developed for use in other acute



1  
2  
3 respiratory conditions, for example the CURB-65 or PSI score for pneumonia or GENEVA  
4 score for pulmonary embolism, and they greatly help clinicians in treatment decisions and  
5 are important for the safety of the patients. All TF members in their practice consider severe  
6 exacerbations of asthma as a significant worsening of the disease that require OCS  
7 treatment for at least 5 days. In the ERS/ATS task force in 2009, a three-day course of  
8 OCS was the recommended definition for clinical trials. This small difference was  
9 supported by all TF members as it may differentiate from patients with episodes of loss of  
10 control requiring short courses (e.g. 1-2 days) of OCS and from temporary increase of  
11 maintenance treatment to improve the control of their disease. These patients may have an  
12 accumulated use of OCS over time equivalent to someone with repeated exacerbations but  
13 will not be reported as such. Whether 3 or 5 days of OCS is more accurate for discriminating  
14 a mild from a severe exacerbation will probably not be addressable in terms of evidence.

15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28 1) Herein we report an expert-based opinion that definitely not intends to change the  
29 definition used in trials in order to keep them comparable and 2) as the harmfulness of  
30 cumulative doses of corticosteroids is obvious above 0.5 g per year [14], a five-days based  
31 definition would make better fit this OCS-associated risk with the threshold of two  
32 exacerbations. Although variable among countries and systems, emergency visit or  
33 hospitalization, the TF members base hospitalization or initiation of treatment with OCS  
34 on the GINA or BTS recommendations to improve standardization. It seems that it would  
35 be important to develop, test and use a composite score that takes into consideration the  
36 patient's previous health status, the presence of comorbidities, history of severe or near  
37 fatal exacerbations, adherence to treatment, psychosocial status, level of control and of  
38 course, response to treatment-the latter is already factored into asthma exacerbation  
39 management guidelines- rather than just clinical severity at presentation and PEFRPEF or  
40 spirometry values.  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53

54  
55 TABLE 1: Examples of definitions of severe exacerbation in asthma patients used in the  
56 literature.  
57  
58  
59  
60

Author	Definition of severe exacerbation	Comment
GINA 2019 [1]	<p><u>Exacerbations of asthma are episodes characterized by a progressive increase in symptoms of shortness of breath, cough, wheezing or chest tightness and progressive decrease in lung function, i.e. they represent a change from the patient's usual status that is sufficient to require a change in treatment.</u> Definition based on symptoms (“talks in words, sits hunched forward, agitated”), clinical findings (RR&gt;30/min, BPM&gt;120/min, SAT&lt;90%, use of accessory muscles) and lung function (<u>PEFRPEF</u>&lt; 50% pref.)</p>	<p>GINA <u>proposes an accurate definition of exacerbations of asthma. Regarding severe exacerbations, GINA refer to the severity of exacerbatons but does not define exact criteria by which to distinguish severity levels</u></p>
Reddel et al (ERS/ATS 2009) [12]	<p>Severe asthma exacerbations are defined as events that require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome, such as hospitalization or death from asthma. <u>The definition should include at least 1 of the following:</u>  <u>a. Use of systemic corticosteroids or an increase from a stable maintenance dose, for at least 3 days.</u>  <u>b. A hospitalization or emergency department (ED) visit because of asthma, requiring systemic corticosteroids</u></p>	<p><del>The definition should include at least 1 of the following:</del>  <del>a. Use of systemic corticosteroids or an increase from a stable maintenance dose, for at least 3 days.</del>  <del>b. A hospitalization or emergency department (ED) visit because of asthma, requiring systemic corticosteroids</del>  <u>Strength: This is the most commonly used definition</u>  <u>Weakness: it relies on patient and doctor subjective assessment, there are no hard criteria for deterioration</u></p>
Custovic et al (EAACI 2013)[9]	<p>No specific definition provided</p>	<p><u>Strength: The taskforce stresses the need for a consensus definition of asthma exacerbation that could usefully guide treatment.</u>  <u>Weakness: It is not really a definition</u>  <del>The taskforce stresses the need for a consensus definition of asthma exacerbation that could usefully guide treatment.</del></p>

O'Byrne et al 2009 [15]	Defined as events requiring hospitalization or emergency treatment due to worsening of asthma, or death due to asthma. <u>Emergency treatment was defined as treatment of acute airway obstruction with systemic corticosteroids and nebulized or parenteral bronchodilators given at a healthcare institution.</u>	<u>Strengths and weaknesses same as those of Ref [12] (ERS/ATS 2009) Emergency treatment was defined as treatment of acute airway obstruction with systemic corticosteroids and nebulized or parenteral bronchodilators given at a healthcare institution.</u>
Green et al [16], Pauwels et al (FACET study) [17]	Decrease in morning PEF >30% on 2 or more consecutive days, or deterioration in symptoms needing OCS	<u>Strengths: Adds an objective limit in addition to the need for OCS or the vague "deterioration"</u> <u>Weakness: 30% decrease is not universally severe, no reference to length of time</u>
Jayaram et al 2006 [18]	Course of OCS as determined by study investigator	<u>Weakness: No objective criteria given ('determined by study investigator')</u> <u>No criteria given for 'determined by study investigator'</u>
Demoly P 2004 [19]	Hospitalization was unanimously recognized as the first criterion for severe exacerbations. A decrease in peak expiratory flow of more than 30% below the baseline value on two consecutive days and an episode requiring systemic corticosteroids were the next criteria. <u>This survey emphasizes the complexity of the notions of asthma control and exacerbation</u>	<u>This survey emphasizes the complexity of the notions of asthma control and exacerbation</u> <u>Strengths: This survey emphasizes the complexity of the notions of asthma control and exacerbation and reflects real life practice. Uses an objective measure and length of time</u> <u>Weakness: No hard criteria</u>
Fuhlbrigge 2013 (NIH workshop) [20]	An exacerbation is a worsening of asthma requiring the use of systemic corticosteroids (or for patients on a stable maintenance dose, an increase in the use of systemic corticosteroids) to prevent a serious outcome <u>(The subcommittee does not endorse severity stratification in the core outcome definition):</u>	<u>The subcommittee does not endorse severity stratification in the core outcome definition</u> <u>Strengths and weaknesses same as ref [12].</u> <u>Addition: increase in use of systemic steroid dose in patients already on steroids</u>

Castro et al 2010 [21]	Those requiring systemic corticosteroids or doubling of ICS dose	<u>Weakness: No criteria given for 'requiring'; 'doubling of ICS dose'</u> <u>No criteria given for 'requiring'; 'doubling of ICS dose' precludes higher dose</u>
Murphy et al 2010 [22]	Defined as episodes requiring medical intervention [hospital admission, emergency department presentation, unscheduled doctor visit or the use of oral corticosteroids (OCS)]	<u>Strengths and weaknesses same as ref [12].</u> <u>The use of OCS is not mandatory</u>

### 3. TRIGGERS AND RISK FACTORS

#### 3A. Assessment of risk: what is cause and what is effect?

The prevention of exacerbations is probably the most important aim for patients with asthma and health care professionals. In order to achieve this aim, it is important to plan the re-assessment of asthma patients and treatment adjustments because of the immediate risks (i.e. acute respiratory failure, death) and future risks (recurrence of exacerbations, decline in lung function, and side effects of treatments) [1]. Routine management strategies assess asthma control based on clinical symptoms, history of exacerbations and pulmonary function testing. In addition, in experienced centers, strategies guided by airway hyperresponsiveness (BHR) or sputum eosinophilia may provide benefit for preventing future exacerbations [16, 23]. In contrast, the use of fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FENO) as a surrogate marker in asthma management is still inconclusive [24–26] except during pregnancy [27]. A recent meta-analysis found more supportive results deserving further evaluations [28].

Since a previous exacerbation has been shown to be an important risk factor for future exacerbations (even though this concept has been challenged) [29], the “frequent exacerbator” likely represents an important clinical phenotype; and asthma treatment should aim to modify

1  
2  
3 what might look like an irreversible cycle [30]. For this purpose, multiple initiatives have  
4 investigated and weighed the importance of individual traits in predicting recurrent  
5 exacerbations. Many other characteristics and conditions have also been reported such as  
6 amount of asthma medication, comorbidities including obesity, occupational stress [31],  
7 sensitization, indoor and outdoor pollution, small airway dysfunction [32], loss of lung elastic  
8 recoil [33], and psychological factors [29, 34–44]. Retrospective studies have shown that  
9 repeated assessment of composite scores of control such as the Asthma Control Test (ACT) or  
10 Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ) and other tools, such as eHealth and mHealth[45], may  
11 predict severe exacerbations [46]. However, whether self-monitoring of asthma control score  
12 questionnaires at home can be useful to predict (and consequently, help to prevent)  
13 exacerbations in a real life setting needs to be further investigated [47–49]. An index of  
14 fluctuation of Peak Expiratory Flow (PEFRPEF) measurements at home was able to predict  
15 exacerbations [50]. Lastly, although a hospital admission provides proof of a severe  
16 exacerbation (see definition), the decision to hospitalize a patient with asthma also depends on  
17 the clinical course during management at the emergency department [2, 51, 52], and on  
18 additional factors such as age, inflammatory phenotype, presence of comorbidities [53, 54], and  
19 familial and social conditions [2, 51, 52].  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

### 42 **3B. Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors and mathematical models**

43  
44 Until recently, modifiable risk factors for exacerbations were mostly seen as behavioral issues  
45 or environmental triggers [55–58]. This included patients' beliefs (or parents' beliefs in the  
46 case of children) and expectations, poor inhalation technique and/or treatment adherence,  
47 (active or passive) smoking and allergen exposure (such as in-house pets, for example). More  
48 recently, the key role of viruses has been acknowledged, and viral triggers are now perceived  
49 as potentially modifiable factors. However, no therapeutic strategies have yet been able to  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 successfully interfere with rhinovirus carriage and bouts of infections in children and adults;  
4 this is an important area of ongoing research. Accordingly, viral infection and impaired host  
5 responses to rhinovirus can be modelled to predict the potential of new antiviral drugs [53, 59–  
6 61]. The synergistic action of allergen exposure (e.g. seasonal pollens, house dust mite) and  
7 viruses may indicate a place for combining strategies targeting each factor alone or in  
8 association [38, 55, 62].  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

18 High blood eosinophil count, reflecting type 2 (T2) inflammation, is well-recognized as a  
19 significant risk factor for asthma exacerbations [63], with a consistent dose-ranging effect  
20 reproduced in different large scale studies [64, 65]. The relative weight of elevated blood  
21 eosinophilia with any other predictor of future exacerbation is largely unknown, but is  
22 influenced by the level of asthma control, asthma severity, asthma phenotype (e.g. age at onset  
23 of asthma), lung function and history of exacerbations. Validated biomarkers reflecting non-  
24 T2 asthma phenotype(s) remain an urgent unmet need [66]. The recognition of T2-related traits  
25 makes a patient with uncontrolled severe asthma eligible for biologic therapies targeting key  
26 T2 disease-drivers, such as eosinophils, IL-4, IL-13 and/or IgE [67]. Elevated blood eosinophil  
27 count is associated with an increased exacerbation risk and to date this is the most relevant  
28 phenotyping marker. The reduction in exacerbation rates provided by anti IgE-, -TSLP, -IL-5-  
29 and -IL-4/IL-13 antibody therapy supports the concept that T2-associated asthma is associated  
30 with an increased risk of exacerbations [68, 69], even though it is not the only one.  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45

46 Asthma patients may follow many different trajectories [56]. These trajectories can be  
47 described under three main categories and sustain the concept of asthma severity (persistently  
48 severe, intermittently severe, never severe). Presently, exacerbations represent one of the key  
49 outcomes in asthma with the greatest asthma-related risks as defined by GINA [1] and hence,  
50 the development of innovative drugs and effective treatment modalities remains a priority.  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Exacerbations are episodes of acute respiratory distress; a situation that causes major stress for the patient themselves, their relatives and even for the health care providers. They represent an important economic burden both in terms of health care use and professional absenteeism. They are also associated with long term risks (relapses, side effects of treatments dominated by systemic steroids, lung function decline) [1, 9, 70]. Some single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and other gene modifiers summarized in **Figure 1** could be associated with such long term risks [62, 71–82]. It appears worthwhile exploring the epigenetic modifications in well-characterized asthma populations, particularly in late onset disease.

## Severe asthma trajectories

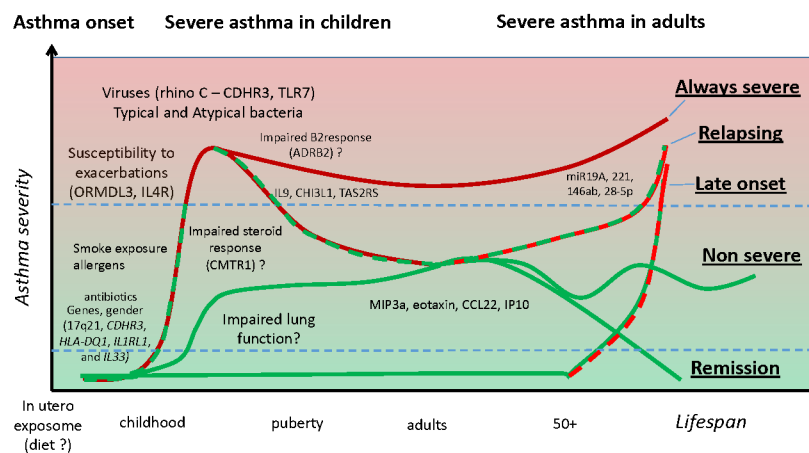


Figure 1 Potential severe asthma trajectories and the importance of risk factors and genetic variants (such as single nucleotide polymorphisms [SNPs]). this figure presents a summary of the literature and is not intended to be exhaustive

### 3C. Risk factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes.

Since severity of asthma is presently defined by treatment requirement, which partly relies on previous exacerbation rates [3], the frequency of exacerbations is associated with severity.

However, exacerbations are not restricted to patients with the severe form of asthma.

1  
2  
3 Near-fatal asthma episodes can occur in patients even with so called “mild asthma”, implicating  
4 that “mild asthma (GINA step 1 and 2) “does not necessarily mean “low risk asthma”. Most of  
5 the time, these patients are not receiving any anti-inflammatory treatment at the time of the  
6 event and their asthma can be well-controlled when it is correctly managed and treated [2, 35].  
7  
8 Near-fatal episodes represent a minority of exacerbations seen in the emergency department  
9 [2]. Interestingly, a hyperbolic curve relating inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) prescription refilling  
10 and asthma mortality is highly suggestive of a strong death-preventing effect of ICS use [83].  
11  
12 Actually, asthma deaths due to exacerbations have decreased over time in westernized  
13 countries. However, their incidence was still estimated to be more than 900 in the UK in the  
14 latest National Review of Asthma Deaths, and at least half of these dramatic cases were  
15 considered preventable [6, 84].

16  
17 Risk factors and clinical characteristics could be identified and robustly confirmed in different  
18 countries. These criteria should be known to all health care providers involved in the  
19 management of asthma and are shown in **Table 2**.

20  
21 Better characterization of disease mechanisms is required in those patients with an incomplete  
22 response to ICS (across GINA steps) [70]. Defining clinical phenotypes and mechanistic  
23 endotypes is a useful concept which has been developed to better manage these patients [85].  
24  
25 In the SARP-3 cohorts, five factors were positively associated with exacerbation frequency:  
26 chronic sinusitis, gastro-esophageal reflux, blood eosinophils, body mass index, and  
27 bronchodilator responsiveness. Clusters in primary care identified early onset and obesity as  
28 risk factors for exacerbations. A cluster of obese female asthmatics with recurrent  
29 exacerbations has been described in both SARP and UBIOPRED cohorts [86, 87]. Furthermore,  
30 a large scale study on children confirmed that obesity is linked with a shorter period of time  
31 between exacerbations [88]. Symptoms such as cough and wheeze are correlated with  
32 uncontrolled asthma, but are poorly associated with exacerbations [89]. Interestingly, new  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 inflammatory patterns of exacerbations are currently described with the integration of the  
4  
5 microbiome and T1-related cytokines [90]. A gene signature derived from sputum gene  
6  
7 transcriptomics containing Charcot-Leyden crystal galectin [CLC]; carboxypeptidase 3  
8  
9 [CPA3]; deoxyribonuclease 1-like 3 [DNASE1L3]; alkaline phosphatase, liver/bone/kidney  
10  
11 [ALPL]; CXCR2; and IL1 $\beta$  (a mixture of eosinophil and mast cell product with neutrophil-  
12  
13 associated cytokines) can predict future exacerbation phenotypes of asthma, with the greatest  
14  
15 biomarker performance compared to fractional exhaled nitric oxide values and sputum  
16  
17 eosinophil counts in identifying those who would experience frequent severe exacerbations  
18  
19 [91].  
20  
21

22 It should be kept in mind that very high blood eosinophil counts (e.g. more than a thousand  
23  
24 per mm<sup>3</sup>) are sometimes associated with other conditions such as eosinophilic granulomatous  
25  
26 with polyangiitis (EGPA) or allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA) which overlap  
27  
28 with severe asthma. These specific conditions are prone to very frequent exacerbations. They  
29  
30 are sometimes difficult to discriminate from severe asthma when all the diagnostic criteria are  
31  
32 not fulfilled [92].  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Table 2. Risk factors for various outcomes in asthma exacerbations

	Likely	Possible	Ref
RF for dying	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• B2 agonist overuse</li> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Age</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• Gender</li> <li>• Drug and venom allergy</li> <li>• Allergen exposure (including thunderstorm asthma)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intubation outside PICU</li> <li>• High number of ED visit</li> <li>• Sports</li> <li>• Alternaria and penicillium spores</li> <li>• Nitrogen dioxide, ozone</li> <li>• Severe asthma</li> </ul>	[35, 93–97]
RF for ICU admission – near fatal asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Severe asthma</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• Loss of elastic recoil</li> <li>• Permanent airflow limitation</li> <li>• Hyperinflation</li> <li>• Menstruation</li> <li>• Steroid dependence</li> <li>• History of intubation</li> <li>• Delayed systemic corticosteroid use</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heroin, cocaine</li> </ul>	[33, 39, 41, 98, 99]
RF for severe exacerbation – ED – admission	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Comorbidities</li> <li>• Psychological issues</li> <li>• Age</li> <li>• Absence of ICS</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> </ul>		
RF for frequent severe exacerbations ( $\geq 2 - 3$ OCS bursts/y)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• High blood eosinophil count</li> <li>• Smoking</li> <li>• Genetic</li> <li>• Atopy</li> <li>• BMI</li> <li>• BD responsiveness</li> <li>• Chronic sinusitis</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low socioeconomic status</li> <li>• GERD</li> <li>• Aspirin sensitive</li> <li>• Climate- Thunderstorms during pollen season</li> </ul>	[54, 100, 101]

RF = risk factor; BD = bronchodilator; BMI = body mass index; ED= emergency department; ICS = inhaled corticosteroids; ICU= intensive care unit; GERD = gastro-esophageal reflux disease; NFA= near-fatal asthma attack; OCS = oral corticosteroids

### 3D. Typology– gender, psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/Adherence

Poor treatment adherence is a major trigger for loss of control at the population level, and this is a common finding also for onset of exacerbations [102]. Although ICS treatment is able to decrease the exacerbation rate at all dose ranges [103], it seems that an adherence of at least 75% of the prescribed dose (hazard ratio [HR] 0.61; 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.41–0.90) is required to achieve this goal [103]. Of note, 24% of exacerbations can be attributed to poor adherence, which is often unintentional due to poor inhalation technique. Moreover, running out of inhaler was frequently reported in ED-attending asthmatics [104]. The use of multiple devices, especially when different principles are mixed, such as dry powder inhalers and metered dose inhalers (MDI), is also a risk [105]. Non-consented switching of inhalers has also been shown to be a significant risk factor for exacerbation; these apparent cost-sparing measures in the short-term are thus subsequently countered by increased health care utilization [106]. Alexithymia [107], specific personality traits [108], and poor perception of symptoms may lead to a delayed request for help [95–100]. Female gender [109, 110], ethnicity [111, 112] and patient beliefs [113] could also be identified as risk factors for exacerbation. The prevalence of psychological dysfunction, including anxiety and depression, is increased in patients with asthma and has been shown to be related to severity of the disease [114]. Anxiety and depression are also strong predictors for poor asthma control [115].

Poor adherence is well documented for ICS; but new injectable biologics also appear susceptible to this, particularly when self-administered [116]. On the other hand, self-administration is likely to improve access to treatment and to reduce the burden of the disease [117].

Several drawbacks could be raised against therapeutic educational programs, but at present many simple and efficient solutions extensively reviewed elsewhere can work [70, 102]. The benefits of written or web-based action plans are worth investigations [118]. Furthermore,

1  
2  
3 e-Health solutions such as electronic reminder messages and, more recently, connected (to a  
4 computer or a smartphone) inhaler devices can be implemented and have been shown to be  
5 effective [119, 120], but as they are usually only geared towards the use of one single inhaler  
6 per patient and no other medication it is likely of limited value for patients requiring multiple  
7 medications. However, these interventions should be prospectively evaluated for their ability  
8 to decrease exacerbation rates over time and whether they are really easing patients' lives.  
9 Stronger partnerships between patients and health care professionals are likely to improve  
10 adherence and new self-adherence programs should be developed and tested for their effect on  
11 preventing (severe) exacerbations.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21

22 Although there is no perfect tool for associating a severe asthma exacerbation with poor  
23 adherence, a minimal adherence checklist is proposed in GINA and the task force decided to  
24 echo it presently (**Table 3**). Dose-counter displaying devices are preferred options according  
25 to a European Lung Foundation (ELF) open discussion organized for the present task force.  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	Factors contributing to poor adherence
6	<i>Medication/Regimen factors</i>
7	- Difficulties using inhaler device
8	- Burdensome regimen (e.g. multiple times per day)
9	- Multiple different inhalers
10	<i>Unintentional poor adherence</i>
11	- Misunderstanding about instructions
12	- Forgetfulness
13	- Absence of a daily routine
14	- Cost
15	<i>Intentional poor adherence</i>
16	- Perception that treatment is not necessary
17	- Denial or anger about asthma or its treatment
18	- Inappropriate expectations
19	- Concerns about side-effects (real or perceived)
20	- Dissatisfaction with health care providers
21	- Stigmatization
22	- Cultural or religious issues
23	- Cost
24	How to identify poor adherence in clinical practice
25	<i>Ask an empathic question</i>
26	- Acknowledge the likelihood of incomplete adherence and encourage an open non-judgmental discussion
27	<i>Check medication usage</i>
28	- Check the date of the last controller prescription
29	- Check the date and dose counter on the inhaler
30	- In some health systems, prescribing and dispensing frequency can be monitored electronically by clinicians and/or pharmacists
31	Examples of successful adherence interventions
32	- Shared decision-making for medication/dose choice
33	- Inhaler reminders for missed doses
34	- Prescribing ICS once-daily versus twice-daily
35	- Home visits for a comprehensive asthma program by an asthma nurse

Table 3. Factors affecting adherence in clinical practice, according to GINA [1].

36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

### 3E. Virus/allergens

A synergy exists between respiratory viral infections and allergen exposure inducing asthma and causing exacerbations in susceptible, sensitized asthmatics [38, 55, 62]. Additionally, interaction between lower respiratory tract viral infections (LRTI) and atopic sensitization has been recognized as a major risk factor contributing to asthma development and exacerbations [62, 121]. Birth cohort studies provide strong evidence for a synergistic effect of viral LRTIs and atopic sensitization on risk of asthma inception, particularly in predisposed children [122, 123]. Several studies in both sensitized children [55, 124] and adults [16, 38] found a strong association between the levels of specific IgE to inhaled allergens and viral LRTIs in increasing the risk of severe asthma exacerbations requiring hospital admission.

The synergism between allergen sensitization and viral LRTIs has been indirectly confirmed in a study in asthmatic children, showing that pretreatment with omalizumab decreases asthma exacerbations in fall, which are likely (rhino-)virus-induced [125]. Recent evidence demonstrates that omalizumab restores deficient anti-viral immunity in children with asthma, and that exacerbation reduction with omalizumab was greatest in those with greatest restoration of anti-viral immunity [125]. Rhinoviruses (RV), especially RV-A and RV-C groups, are the most frequent viruses detected during an asthma exacerbation including severe asthma exacerbations with near-fatal and fatal asthma, and allergic asthmatics usually experience more severe and prolonged LRTI symptoms with RV infection compared to non-atopic healthy controls [38, 55, 126]. Interestingly, CDHR3 polymorphism is a risk factor for RV induced severe asthma exacerbations in children [71], possibly because it has recently been shown to be an RV-C receptor [127]. Another study showed that documenting a viral infection in the ED was a strong predictor for ED re-attendance in children [128]. Impaired interferon responses to RV infection are associated with asthma in both adults and children [105, 106], and are

1  
2  
3 associated with increased RV-induced asthma exacerbation severity [131] Although appealing,  
4 the development of a RV vaccine appears highly challenging [132] However, a proof of concept  
5 study on inhaled IFN- $\beta$  as a therapeutic intervention in virus-induced asthma exacerbations  
6 only showed benefit in a subgroup of people with moderate/severe asthma [133], implicating  
7 that further research is needed to investigate the concept of interferon supplementation in  
8 asthmatics at exacerbation onset.  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

### 18 **3F. Environmental factors: indoor/outdoor air pollution & occupational factors**

19  
20 Outdoor air pollution is an established risk factor for asthma exacerbations, although the  
21 magnitude of effect remains difficult to assess precisely [101]. Diesel exhaust particles and  
22 peaks of ambient air pollution, (reflected by, amongst others, high levels of nitrogen dioxide  
23 and ozone) were shown as concomitant factors to emergency department attendance in  
24 asthmatics but also could be epidemiologically related to asthma exacerbations and deaths [97].  
25  
26 Work-related exacerbations are probably underestimated whereas many different non-specific  
27 irritants could be identified such as mineral dusts, gas and fumes etc. [134].  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

35 Indoor air pollution comprises second-hand tobacco smoke exposure, which is of special  
36 interest in children, but also other less well-known contributors such as volatile organic  
37 compounds (VOC) [135]. Open fire place, sick building syndrome, cleaning supplies and  
38 household products, and inadequate ventilation are also to be integrated into potential sources  
39 of indoor air pollution. We propose to test whether facilitating access to air quality data records  
40 may prevent asthma exacerbations. The European Lung Foundation (ELF), while reviewing  
41 the present manuscript, supports the use of portable air quality sensors, but more research is  
42 needed to know what and how to measure the right substances.  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51

52 Occupational sensitizers and triggers have been cause for concern for many years and efforts  
53 have been taken to limit their impact. All TF members in their practice consider it worthwhile  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 facilitating access to free and independent experts in occupational medicine, as well as using  
4 FENO, spirometry, and potentially other relevant diagnostic tests (e.g. induced sputum) at  
5 work, especially considering their relatively low direct and indirect costs. More research is  
6 needed on occupational triggers and their effect on severe asthma exacerbations. Patients also  
7 raised the need to support asthma patients when choosing careers to avoid known and  
8 dangerous sensitizers and triggers.  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

### 18 **3G. Drugs & irritants / Excessive use of $\beta_2$ -agonists**

19  
20 Whether drugs known to affect airway smooth muscle tone (such as  $\beta$ -blockers) are able  
21 to trigger an asthma exacerbation is unclear. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID)  
22 and aspirin intake in susceptible patients induces asthma exacerbations, and low dose induction  
23 of tolerance must be investigated to assess their benefit in preventing exacerbations.  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

29 Excessive use of short-acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists (SABA) in the absence of ICS use has  
30 long been linked to hospitalizations and asthma deaths, best exemplified by asthma deaths  
31 epidemics related to high doses of fenoterol reported in New Zealand and other countries [136].  
32  
33  
34

35 Also regular use of long-acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists (LABA) in the absence of ICS has  
36 been shown to increase significantly the risk of asthma exacerbations and asthma deaths  
37 potentially through a “masking” effect [137–139]. Not only overuse, but also regular use of  
38 SABA – without ICS [140] – has also been associated with paradoxical asthma worsening [52,  
39 141]. Mechanisms involved are not fully understood, but may relate to induction of  
40 inflammatory mediators in bronchial epithelial cells by  $\beta_2$ -agonists (both SABA  
41 and LABA), when administered in the absence of ICS [142] , and/or by a tachyphylaxis  
42 phenomenon but this is still to be demonstrated in vivo [143]. Because several short and long  
43 acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists are now available, their potential side effects should be  
44 assessed in detail and reported, especially as paradoxical triggers for loss of control and  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 exacerbations. The TF members limit these issues by systematic concomitant ICS use and  
4  
5 reassess the patients repeatedly. Most TF members avoid frequent and inappropriate use of  
6  
7 repeated or regular high doses of SABA irrespective of the manner of administration (inhaled:  
8  
9 pMDI, DPI, or nebulisation) without medical supervision.  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

#### 4. ACUTE MANAGEMENT

##### TREATMENT OF SEVERE ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS

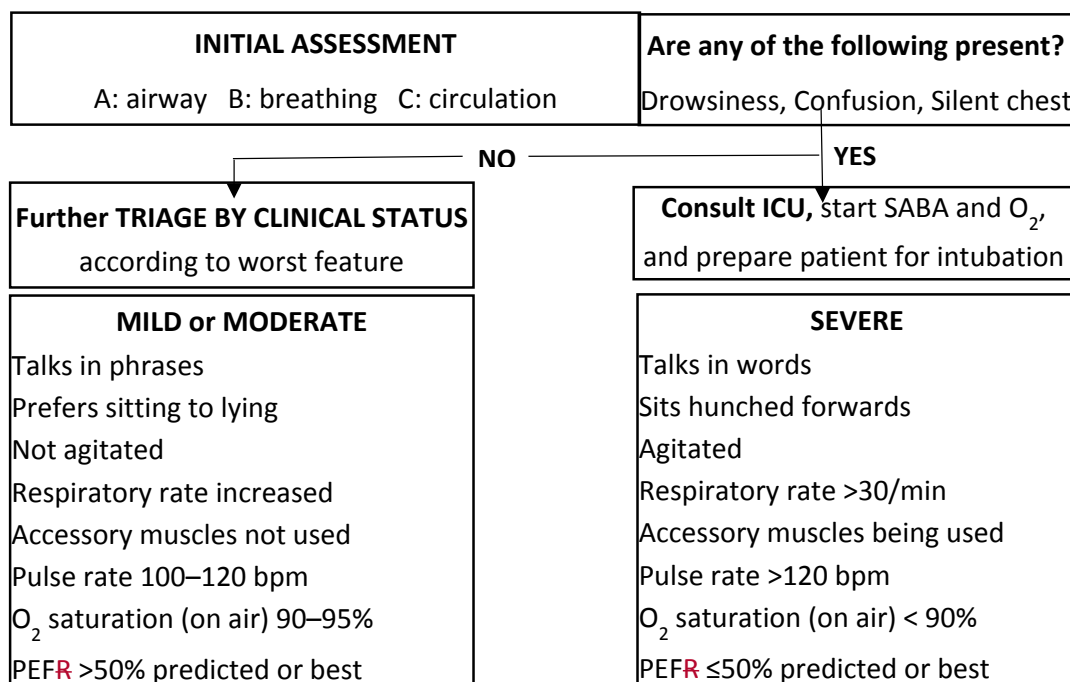
Despite optimum maintenance therapy and appropriate prevention strategies, severe exacerbations occur, even in patients with mild disease or well-controlled asthma [1, 144]. Therefore, proper assessment and adequate intervention are crucial to stabilize asthma and alleviate symptoms. Although in recent years there has been ample research into the treatment of stable asthma and several new drugs and formulations have been marketed, so far a limited number of treatments are available for asthma exacerbations while limited evidence exists in support of their use [145].

For patients presenting with acute asthma to primary care or emergency department (ED), the TF members consider that a proper assessment of exacerbation severity is determined based on history, physical examination and objective measurements of lung function and oxygen saturation [146] (**Figure 2**). Arterial blood gas measurements and chest X-ray are not included in the guidelines dedicated to the initial assessment, nevertheless they are performed by all the TF members for patients with severe exacerbations and for those who do not respond to initial treatment or are deteriorating [147–149].

Information from patients' history can identify those who are at increased risk of worst outcome and asthma-related death and prompt arrangements to be made for more frequent evaluation and aggressive treatment (**Table 2**).

Treatment is usually started immediately and simultaneously with the initial evaluation of the patient. The following treatments are usually administered concurrently to achieve the most rapid resolution of the exacerbation and prevent patient deterioration.

Figure 2: Assessment of exacerbation severity based physical signs and objective measurements (adapted from GINA [1])



## Oxygen

Oxygen is usually delivered by nasal cannula or Venturi mask in order to achieve arterial oxygen saturation of 93–98%. In severe exacerbations, high concentration oxygen increases the risk of hypercapnia while controlled low flow oxygen therapy is associated with better outcomes [150–152].

## Short-acting $\beta_2$ -agonists ~~b2-agonists~~ (SABA)

SABAs intend to resolve bronchospasm and to relieve acute symptoms of asthma, and are usually initially administered every 15 to 20 minutes for the first hour during an acute asthma exacerbation. Comparison of pMDI-spacer and nebulizer has shown increased efficiency of SABA delivery via pMDI-spacer and equivalent clinical outcomes [153, 154]. Data are conflicting whether continuous nebulization with a SABA is superior to intermittent

1  
2  
3 nebulization [155, 156]. In severe asthma exacerbations, continuous nebulization may be  
4 preferred, based on evidence of reduced admissions and improved pulmonary function [155,  
5 157]. There is no evidence to support the routine use of intravenous ~~beta2-agonists~~  $\beta_2$ -agonists  
6 in patients with severe asthma exacerbations [158].  
7  
8  
9  
10

#### 11 Ipratropium bromide

12  
13  
14 Adding ipratropium bromide to SABA decreases rates of hospitalizations and shortens ED  
15 stays for patients with severe asthma exacerbations [159–161]. Some evidence shows that the  
16 use of combination ipratropium/~~beta~~-agonist therapy in acute asthmatic exacerbations provides  
17 benefit without increased risk of adverse events [161].  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

#### 26 Corticosteroids

27  
28  
29 Early administration of systemic corticosteroids for the treatment of asthma exacerbations is  
30 considered a standard of care and is recommended worldwide to be given to the patient within  
31 1 hour of presentation [162, 163]. A systematic review showed that the use of systemic  
32 corticosteroids reduces the rate of hospital admission in ED settings, especially in patients with  
33 severe asthma and those not currently receiving corticosteroids [164].  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39

40 The optimal dose for systemic corticosteroids in asthma exacerbations remains to be  
41 established. Doses above 2 mg/kg or 60-80 mg/day do not add benefit to improving lung  
42 function, rates of hospital admission or length of hospital stay [162, 165]. Furthermore, no  
43 differences are found between oral and intravenous administration of comparable  
44 corticosteroid doses [166, 167]. Thus, daily doses of OCS equivalent to 50 mg prednisolone as  
45 a single morning dose, or 200 mg hydrocortisone in divided doses, are adequate for most  
46 patients [1]. A short course of 5 days OCS after ED treatment of acute asthma exacerbations  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 has been shown to reduce the rate of relapse [1, 164]. Courses longer than 5 days or a dose  
4 tapering did not provide additional benefit while increased side effects [168, 169].  
5  
6

7 The role of ICS in the management of asthma in the emergency department remain unclear and  
8 their use in severe asthma exacerbations is not evenly adopted [170].  
9  
10  
11  
12

### 13 Other treatments

14  
15 None of the TF members use intravenous aminophylline and theophylline in the management  
16 of asthma exacerbations, in view of their poor efficacy and safety profile [1]. Intravenous  
17 magnesium sulphate (given as a single 2g infusion over 20 minutes) has been shown to reduce  
18 hospital admissions in severe exacerbations and in patients who fail to respond to initial  
19 treatment [171, 172]. Evidence does not support a role of antibiotics in asthma exacerbations  
20 unless there is strong presumption of lung infection [1, 173]. Other associated advices of  
21 management (hydration, physiotherapy, avoid exercise, etc.) are poorly evidenced [174].  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31 Noteworthy, exercise outside an episode of exacerbation should be largely supported as it was  
32 shown to prevent exacerbations and to improve control [175].  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## 5. PREVENTION

Here we describe the evidence for current therapies available across the severity spectrum of asthma, licensed biologics and those in phase 3 clinical development.

### Current small molecule asthma therapies

#### Corticosteroids

Extensive data support the role of inhaled corticosteroids in asthma with increasing dose reducing exacerbation frequency [1, 176, 177]. Increasing the ICS dose four-fold at the onset of exacerbation symptoms reduced the need for systemic corticosteroids by 19% [178]. No randomized controlled trials exist of prednisolone versus placebo as add-on therapy in severe asthma [179]. Registry data suggested that maintenance oral corticosteroid use was associated with reduced exacerbations among a cohort of severe asthmatics [180]. In a small study, high-dose intramuscular triamcinolone reduced hospital admissions and emergency department attendances; however, the long-term side effect profiles of systemic steroids have to be taken in mind. TF members use maintenance OCS as a therapeutic strategy for reducing exacerbations as a less preferred option and suggest this practice be supervised in expert referral centers familiar with the management and prevention of OCS side effects [181].

Presence of eosinophilic inflammation predicts a good response to corticosteroids in airways disease [182–184]. Tailoring corticosteroid dose to control sputum eosinophilia in asthma has achieved marked reductions in exacerbation rates [16, 18, 185] and the ERS/ATS guideline advocates measurement of eosinophilic inflammation in severe asthma [3].

Given the superiority of an on-demand ICS-containing regimen in two separate trials performed in patients with mild asthma in reducing the risk of exacerbation [186, 187], later confirmed in a real-life setting [188], the last GINA update promotes this strategy as early as

1  
2  
3 step 1, acknowledging the obvious inflammatory nature of the disease and in particular during  
4  
5 episodes of poor control that precedes exacerbation.  
6

7 The management of asthma using a sputum-guided adjustment of the daily dose of ICS was  
8  
9 shown efficient to prevent exacerbations in expert centers where induced sputum cytology can  
10  
11 be assessed routinely, in patients able to provide an adequate sample within the safety margins  
12  
13 of induction [16, 18].  
14  
15

16  
17  
18 Long Acting Beta-Agonists (LABA) added to ICS

19  
20 ICS-LABA combination therapy is standard in severe asthma and the addition of a LABA to  
21  
22 ICS reduces exacerbation frequency in asthma [1, 176, 177]. The TF echoed recurrent warnings  
23  
24 regarding monotherapy with LABA in asthma [189].  
25  
26

27  
28  
29 Long Acting Muscarinic Antagonists (LAMA) added to ICS

30  
31 Tiotropium, as add-on therapy for asthmatics uncontrolled while treated with ICS and LABA,  
32  
33 increased time to first exacerbation by 56 days versus placebo (P=0.03) [190]. A Cochrane  
34  
35 review of LAMA added to ICS vs ICS alone across all severities of asthma showed a reduction  
36  
37 in exacerbations requiring oral corticosteroids, and a trend towards reduction in hospital  
38  
39 admissions [191].  
40  
41

42  
43  
44 Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists (LTRA)

45  
46 A systematic review of LTRAs identified a significant reduction in exacerbations when used  
47  
48 as monotherapy compared to placebo, but no effect on exacerbation rates when used in patients  
49  
50 already taking inhaled corticosteroids [192]. Whether LTRAs reduce severe exacerbations in  
51  
52 severe asthmatics is unknown.  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

### Theophylline

A study comparing ICS/LABA and theophylline vs ICS/LABA and placebo found a significant reduction in severe exacerbations in the theophylline group in asthmatics who were treatment naïve [193]. Whether theophylline affects exacerbation frequency in severe asthma is unknown. Most TF members do not use theophylline as an add-on therapy for preventing exacerbations.

### Antimicrobials

In a large clinical trial thrice-weekly azithromycin in moderate-to-severe asthma resulted in a 41% reduction in severe exacerbations with benefits independent of inflammatory phenotype [194], in contrast to a previous sub-analysis in severe asthmatic patients where the benefits were limited to the non-eosinophilic subgroup [195]. Of note, worldwide, azithromycin is not approved to the best of knowledge in this indication. Anti-fungal agents in fungal-sensitized severe asthma not meeting criteria for allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis demonstrated no impact on severe exacerbations [196].

### Immunosuppressants

Data reporting exacerbations was limited in a Cochrane review examining the corticosteroid sparing effect of cyclosporin in severe oral corticosteroid dependent asthma [197]. A similar review examining the corticosteroid sparing effects of methotrexate in severe asthma did not demonstrate a beneficial effect on exacerbation rates [198].

### Allergen avoidance and immunotherapy

Allergen avoidance advice is standard clinical practice in severe asthma [1, 176, 177], but allergen avoidance has shown controversial benefit [199] possibly due to difficulty in achieving this effectively. Allergen immunotherapy (AIT) strategies in asthma report some benefit for



1  
2  
3 reducing symptoms and corticosteroid usage but have not been tested in severe asthma [200].  
4  
5 It is unknown whether measures such as nocturnal temperature controlled laminar flow will be  
6  
7 effective. Reductions in airway inflammation are reported in atopic asthma [201] and studies in  
8  
9 severe asthma are ongoing [202].  
10

#### 11 12 13 Current biologics for asthma (Table 4)

14  
15 The phase 3 RCTs for currently available biological therapy in asthma, except for anti-IgE as  
16  
17 more established, are summarized in Table 4, including phase 2b studies that were considered  
18  
19 pivotal for registration. Studies in less severe asthma with a very low event rate, open-label  
20  
21 extensions that confirmed earlier findings and studies that did not report exacerbations were  
22  
23 not included.  
24  
25

#### 26 27 28 Anti-IgE: Omalizumab

29  
30 A Cochrane review of omalizumab as add-on therapy in moderate-to-severe asthma reported a  
31  
32 reduction (odds ratio (OR) 0.55, 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.42 to 0.60; ten studies, 3261  
33  
34 participants) in severe exacerbations [203], however subgroup analysis of severe asthma alone  
35  
36 did not demonstrate a clear benefit. Further clinical trials remain ongoing [201].  
37  
38  
39  
40

#### 41 42 Anti-IL5: Mepolizumab and Reslizumab

43  
44 Mepolizumab reduces exacerbation frequency by ~50% [5, 65, 204–206] and reduces the  
45  
46 requirement for maintenance oral corticosteroid [206]. Benefits were observed in severe  
47  
48 asthmatics with blood eosinophils >150cells/ $\mu$ L [207], with greatest exacerbation frequency  
49  
50 reductions seen with increasing eosinophilic inflammation. These beneficial effects were not  
51  
52 sustained over the 12 months following treatment withdrawal [208] while it was the case when  
53  
54 treatment was maintained [209]. This exacerbation rate reduction was also achieved while  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 tapering OCS in long term OCS users[210]. Reslizumab demonstrated a reduction in severe  
4 exacerbations in severe asthmatics with a baseline blood eosinophil count >400 cells/ $\mu$ L [211].  
5  
6 Improvements were greatest in those with GINA step 5 disease [212].  
7  
8  
9

#### 10 11 Anti-IL5R: Benralizumab

12  
13 Benralizumab reduces severe exacerbations [64, 213, 214] in those with a blood eosinophil count  
14 >300 cells/ $\mu$ L. A priori sub-analyses using an eosinophil cut off of 150 cells/ $\mu$ L also  
15 demonstrated significant reductions in exacerbation rates [215], although higher blood  
16 eosinophils and more frequent exacerbations predicted greater benefits [216]. This exacerbation  
17 rate reduction was also achieved while tapering OCS in long term OCS users [214]. A study of  
18 benralizumab administered in the setting of acute asthma exacerbation [66] reported a positive  
19 impact on recovery rates, however further work would be required to define the use of biologics  
20 in this setting.  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

#### 32 33 Bronchial Thermoplasty

34  
35 In 190 subjects who received bronchial thermoplasty (BT) versus 98 who underwent sham  
36 procedures severe exacerbations were reduced by 32% in the 3-12 months post therapy with  
37 an increase in exacerbation events in the peri-procedure period [21]. This reduction in  
38 exacerbations was maintained over a 5 year follow up period [217]. BT is currently performed  
39 only in trained centers for both managing severe asthma and handling BT.  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

#### 48 49 Emerging biologics

##### 50 51 Anti-IL4R: Dupilumab

52  
53 Dupilumab reduced severe exacerbations in all-comers irrespectively of the atopic status, with  
54 the greatest reduction in those with elevated FeNO and/or eosinophilic inflammation, and  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 reduced oral corticosteroid requirement for severe asthmatics receiving maintenance oral  
4 corticosteroids [68, 218, 219]. Studies of IL4 inhibition alone and more recently of the anti-IL13  
5 biologics lebrikizumab [220] and tralokinumab [221] have failed to meet their primary  
6 endpoints of exacerbation reduction, suggesting that inhibition of both IL-4 and 13, as with  
7 anti-IL4R, is necessary to observe sufficient clinical efficacy for this aspect of the disease.  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13

#### 14 15 16 Anti-TSLP: Tezepelumab

17  
18 A recent phase II trial investigated the impact of tezepelumab on exacerbation rates in 584  
19 moderate-to-severe asthmatics, showing a 60-70% reduction in exacerbations in all-comers  
20 across dosing regimens [222]. Effects were observed irrespective of markers of T2  
21 inflammation, although substantial reductions in these measures were noted, suggesting that  
22 targeting upstream cytokine pathways may reduce exacerbations across inflammatory profiles.  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

#### 31 CRTH2 antagonists, anti IL17 and others

32  
33 ILC2 are now seen as the pivotal cells of T2 airway inflammation. Because they specifically  
34 express the PGD2 receptor DP2 or CRTH2, a proof of concept study showed that anti-DP2  
35 treatment could significantly reduce the blood eosinophil count [223]. Whether this will be  
36 sufficient for preventing exacerbations is the aim of a larger ongoing phase III trial.  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43

44 The IL33-ST2 axis is also specifically targeting ILC2 [224] and pivotal studies are ongoing. In  
45 non T2 asthma, the relevance of blocking IL17 for preventing exacerbations is also currently  
46 being tested [225].  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51

#### 52 Conclusion

53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Reduction and ultimately elimination of severe exacerbations in severe asthma remains an  
4 important therapeutic target. In addition to corticosteroids and allergen  
5 avoidance/immunotherapy, the biologics targeting T2-immunity and eosinophilic  
6 inflammation (anti-IgE, IL-5, IL-4R and TSLP) reduce exacerbations. Whether other therapies  
7 that reduce eosinophilic inflammation such as anti-DP2, will demonstrate a similar efficacy  
8 remains to be determined. Beyond T2 inflammation, macrolide antibiotics and bronchial  
9 thermoplasty may have a role, but reducing severe exacerbations in non-T2 severe asthma  
10 remains an unmet need, although the scale of its importance once T2-mediated disease is  
11 adequately treated is uncertain.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23

## 24 **5. CONCLUSION AND BULLET POINTS FROM THE ELF**

25 Preventing severe exacerbations in asthma is very important from the perspective of people  
26 with asthma. Too many patients still die, whereas these deaths are likely preventable, from a  
27 severe exacerbation. In some countries asthma and respiratory deaths are still increasing,  
28 especially in non-severe and moderate asthma [84]. Why this is happening still needs to be  
29 explored but facilitating access to care and medications would probably be efficient.  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

- 37 • In all types of asthma: It is important to remain aware that severe exacerbations don't  
38 just happen in patients with the more severe types of asthma.
- 39 • Exacerbations and especially recurrent exacerbations are very debilitating for patients.  
40 More research is needed to avoid exacerbations and to break the cycle of recurrent  
41 exacerbations. The medications and treatments plans that are available at this time do  
42 not seem to be working well enough for all patients.
- 43 • Adherence: patients and physicians need to work together on improving adherence.  
44 Good communication between physician and patient is key. There are many factors that  
45 impede adherence for patients. Some straight-forward ways to support patients can be  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 implemented easily like having dose-counters on all inhalators. It can be more  
4  
5 challenging to address patients developing additional behavior. All aspects require  
6  
7 continuous positive attention from physicians.  
8

- 9  
10 • Indoor and outdoor environmental factors: the advice to avoid environmental factors is  
11  
12 an additional burden moreover because it is extremely complex to put into practice for  
13  
14 patients. More and better advice needs to be given to patients on living conditions,  
15  
16 occupational choices etc.  
17
- 18 • Working together with patients in improving their asthma care is key. Many patients  
19  
20 have good knowledge on their asthma and their reaction to medications. Not all patients  
21  
22 have this insight and not all patients are able to manage their asthma on a daily basis.  
23  
24 We all need personalized help. E-health can support some patients, but only if these  
25  
26 solutions are developed with patients and are sufficiently flexible and personalized.  
27

28  
29 Research needs and knowledge caps identified throughout this task force are summarized table  
30  
31 5.  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Table 4: Pivotal Phase 3 randomised clinical trials of licensed biologics (excluding anti-IgE)

Intervention	Reference	Population	Description of intervention/ duration	Effect on exacerbations
Mepolizumab Anti-IL5	MUSCA [205]	Adults and children (>12 years), n = 556 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Blood eosinophils ≥300/μl in last 12 months or ≥150/μl at screening	100mg SC Q4W 24 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 42% ↓ exacerbations requiring emergency department (ED) visit or hospitalization 32% No significant change in hospitalizations alone
	SIRIUS [226]	Adults (16 – 74 years), n = 135 Background therapy 5 to 35 mg/day of prednisone or its equivalent for > 6 months Blood eosinophil count ≥150 cells/μL at screening or ≥300 cells/μL in the last year	100mg SC Q4W 20 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 32% OR for glucocorticoid reduction 2.39 in mepolizumab group (0.008) Median glucocorticoid reduction 50% (vs 0% in controls)
	MENSA [5]	Adults and children (aged ≥12 years), n = 576 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Blood eosinophil count ≥150 cells/μL at screening or ≥300 cells/μL in the last year	75mg IV Q4W or 100mg SC Q4W 32 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 47 - 53% SC mepolizumab ↓ exacerbations requiring ED/hospitalization (61%) and exacerbations requiring hospitalization (69%) ↓ systemic glucocorticoid exposure 41%
	Pavord Lancet 2012 [53] (Phase 2b/3)	Adults and children (12 – 74 years), n = 621 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Sputum eosinophils ≥ 3%, FeNO ≥ 50 ppb, blood eosinophil count ≥ 300 cells/μL or deterioration in asthma control with ≤ 25% reduction in corticosteroid treatment (in the last year)	75mg IV Q4W or 250mg IV Q4W or 750mg IV Q4W 52 weeks	↓ exacerbations 39 - 52% Exacerbations requiring ED/hospitalization reduced across all groups Greatest reduction in exacerbations with baseline eosinophils > 500 cells/μL
Reslizumab Anti-IL-5	Castro [211]	Adults and children (12 – 75 years), n = 953 (study 1 n=489, study 2 n=464) ≥1 exacerbation in last year Blood eosinophil count ≥400 cells/μL	3mg/kg IV Q4W 52 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 54% ↓ exacerbations requiring OCS 57% ↓ exacerbations in those on OCS at baseline by 68% Exacerbations ↓ 64% if ≥4 exacerbations in last 12 months at baseline (vs. ↓ 32% if 1 exacerbation last 12 months)
Benralizumab Anti-IL-5R	ZONDA [214]	Adults (18 – 75 years), n = 220 Background therapy (7.5 – 40mg/day prednisolone or its equivalent for > 6 months) Blood eosinophils ≥150 cells/μL at screening	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 28 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 55 - 70% Q8W Q8W dosing reduced exacerbations associated with ED visit or hospitalization by 93% OR for glucocorticoid reduction 4.1 Median glucocorticoid reduction 75% (vs 25% in controls)
	SIROCCO [64]	Adults and children (12 – 75 years), n = 1205 ≥2 exacerbations in last year	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 48 weeks	Eosinophil High (≥300 cells per μL): ↓ exacerbations 45 - 51% Q8W dosing reduced exacerbations associated with ED visit or hospitalization by 68%

	CALIMA [213]	As per SIROCCO, n = 306	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 56 weeks	Eosinophil High ↓ exacerbations 28 - 36% No effect on hospitalizations/ED visits
Dupiluma b Anti- IL4Rα	Castro NEJM 2018 QUEST [68]	Adults and children (≥12 years), n = 1902 ≥ 1 exacerbation in last year	200mg SC Q2W or 300mg SC Q2W 52 weeks	↓ severe exacerbations 46% across treatment population ≥150 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 60% ≥300 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 67%
	VENTUR E [69]	Adults and children (≥12 years), n = 210 Background therapy (5 – 35mg/day prednisolone or equivalent for > 6 months)	300mg SC Q2W 24 weeks	↓ severe exacerbations 59% across treatment populations ≥150 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 58% ≥300 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 71% Median glucocorticoid reduction 100% (vs 50% in controls)

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



Table 5. Research needs and knowledge gaps

Item	Research needs	Type of study design	Type of outcomes that need to be assessed
Definition of severe exacerbation—of asthma	To assess in routine practice, what is the most sensitive and specific definition (duration of OCS requirement, daily dose and cumulative dose)	Re-analysis of RCT and real-life trials where diaries and home monitoring were used Registries and cohorts	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Definition of severe exacerbation	To assess prediction models in real life cohorts Whether prediction model would work in real life	Re-analysis of RCT and real-life trials where diaries and home monitoring were used Registries and cohorts	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Definition of severe exacerbation	To establish composite scores to assess immediate risk	Retrospective analysis of databases of exacerbations	Short term outcomes: admission, ICU, intubation, deaths, treatment related adverse events
Strategy	To assess the impact of self-monitoring on asthma control and prevention of exacerbations Self-monitoring of asthma control can prevent exacerbation?	Randomised controlled trials comparing conventional vs self-monitoring strategy	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Strategy	To assess the effectiveness of interventions to prevent human rhinovirus carriage Prevent human rhinovirus carriage?	Randomised controlled trials comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	What is the weight of blood eosinophilia when compared to other risk factors at the individual level	Prospective cohort studies integrating all risk factors	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	Is there a place for genetic analysis awareness at the individual level to predict severe exacerbation and asthma trajectory	Test acceptability RCT comparing strategies of management in patients with known at-risk allele carriage vs routine	Severe exacerbation rates in patients and relatives, in particular in children with high risk scores (familial risk, patients already admitted in ICU)

Risk factor/trigger	<u>What</u> <del>To</del> more accurately know the mechanisms, rate and risk factors of non-preventable deaths attributable to severe exacerbations that occurred despite an optimal preventive strategy and acute management	Multiple exhaustive reviews of asthma deaths. Worldwide collection of cases where death occurred despite optimal management	Biology, pathology
Risk factor/trigger	To identify and weight all risk factors associated with death, ICU, ED and frequent exacerbations	Cohorts and registries of compelling cases	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To identify tools for assessing/improving adherence	RCT comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of eHealth-connected devices to prevent severe exacerbation	RCT comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	to assess tools / resources / methods (e.g. shared decision making, systematic multidisciplinary approaches, referral to asthma centres) to improve patient-HCP partnership Improve patient-HCP partnership	Studies assessing changes in patient-HCP partnership through training, education programs, etc.	Parallel studies associating changes in patient-HCP partnership with changes in severe exacerbation rates
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of using air quality sensors	RCT in selected populations	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of more accurately evidence the Role of occupational triggers	Basic science, models, psycho and sociology	Rooms of exposition with inflammatory / lung function monitoring HRQOL
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the preventive benefits of convincingly support patient when choosing careers	Prospective cohorts with randomized strategies	In teenagers/young adults and in people changing of occupation

Risk factor/trigger	<u>To assess the exact role of drugs in severe Exacerbations.(incidence, dose, diagnosis, prevention) induced by drugs (BB, NSAID)</u>	<u>Prospective cohorts with randomized strategies. Models of exposition in animals and cell models</u>	<u>Prospective recording of severe exacerbation. Maximal documentation of each event.</u>
Treatment of severe exacerbation	<u>To define the Vvalue of CXR and arterial blood gases in acute management</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials</u>	<u>Dedicated populations such as ED attending</u>
Treatment of severe exacerbation	<u>To establish an Ooptimal scheme for SABA administration</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials comparing different strategies of SABA administration (dose, route, frequency, duration, associated treatment)</u>	<u>Rates of OCS bursts <math>\geq</math> 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events</u>
Treatment of severe exacerbation	<u>To assess the Rrole of ICS during the exacerbation and at discharge</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials</u>	<u>Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, adverse events</u>
Treatment of severe exacerbation	<u>To assess What are the benefits of hydration, physiotherapy, exercise avoidance during exacerbation; optimal time to go back to exercise</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials, comparative studies</u>	<u>Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, adverse events, quality of life</u>
Prevention	<u>Whether To assess whether LTRAs add-on reduce severe exacerbations in severe asthmatics is unknown</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials</u>	<u>Rates of OCS bursts <math>\geq</math> 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events</u>
Prevention	<u>whether To assess the benefits of measures such as nocturnal temperature controlled laminar flow will be effective</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials</u>	<u>Rates of OCS bursts <math>\geq</math> 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events</u>
Prevention	<u>further work would be required to define assess the use of biologics in the setting of acute exacerbation</u>	<u>Randomized controlled trials</u>	<u>Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, disease associated and hospital acquired-adverse events, quality of life</u>

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

From the patients' perspective	Overall, to find treatments for patients not responding well to currently available medications and treatments plans that are available at this time do not seem to be working well enough for all patients	Randomized controlled trials in non eligible patients to existing drugs (low T2, failure of currently available biologics for example)	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events
--------------------------------	---	--	---

Table 6.

<u>Section no</u>	<u>Section title</u>	<u>Keypoints</u>
<u>1</u>	<u>Definitions</u>	<u>A definition based on five days of OCS is preferred to three to better fit with the recognized harmfulness of cumulative doses of OCS; a composite score assessing risk factors (age, comorbidities, history) would be helpful.</u>
<u>2</u>	<u>Triggers and risk factors</u>	<u>Within trajectories of asthma, the frequent exacerbator phenotype is a reality, and is more frequently associated with a T2 pattern</u>
<u>2A</u>	<u>Assessment of risk, What is cause and what is effect</u>	<u>T2 inflammation and lack of adequate treatment more likely exposes to exacerbation rather than the opposite.</u>
<u>2B</u>	<u>Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors &amp; Mathematical models</u>	<u>Viral infections are now considered modifiable, associated with prevention of noxious environmental exposures.</u>
<u>2C</u>	<u>Risk Factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes</u>	<u>Susceptibility to severe exacerbations is not always shared with susceptibility to asthma severity. Low T2 asthma and other newly identified endotypes are currently orphans of targeted drugs.</u>
<u>2D</u>	<u>Personality type – Gender, Psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/adherence</u>	<u>Multidisciplinary approaches may help in identifying and managing better patients at risk of death, ICU admission and severe exacerbations</u>
<u>2E</u>	<u>Virus / Allergens</u>	<u>Rhinoviruses are ideal culprit fostering severity of exacerbations amplifiable by allergens. No dedicated treatment or preventive strategy currently exist.</u>
<u>2F</u>	<u>Environmental air pollution indoor/outdoor pollution &amp; occupational factors</u>	<u>Although obvious, the environmental impact is under-recognized and occupational factors insufficiently assessed and evidenced in practice.</u>
<u>2G</u>	<u>Drugs &amp; irritants / Overdose of <math>\beta_2</math>-agonists</u>	<u>Dangers of high SABA use includes worsening of asthma itself.</u>
<u>3</u>	<u>Acute Management</u>	<u>Systemic corticosteroids and bronchodilators are still the cornerstones of the acute management. Because some asthma deaths are not preventable, there is a place to develop new drugs on top of standard of care</u>
<u>4</u>	<u>Prevention</u>	<u>Inhaled corticosteroids +/- bronchodilators and in eligible patients with more severe disease biologics prevent severe exacerbations.</u>

<u>5</u>	<u>ELF Patient perspective</u>	<u>The currently available treatments and supports are not working well enough for all. More research and partnership are needed.</u>
----------	--------------------------------	---

## References

1. (\*NEW) 2018 GINA Report: Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention [Internet]. Global Initiative for Asthma - GINA [cited 2018 Sep 19]. Available from: <https://ginasthma.org/2018-gina-report-global-strategy-for-asthma-management-and-prevention/>.
2. Salmeron S, Liard R, Elkharrat D, Muir J, Neukirch F, Ellrodt A. Asthma severity and adequacy of management in accident and emergency departments in France: a prospective study. *Lancet* 2001; 358: 629–635.
3. Chung KF, Wenzel SE, Brozek JL, Bush A, Castro M, Sterk PJ, Adcock IM, Bateman ED, Bel EH, Bleeker ER, Boulet L-P, Brightling C, Chaney P, Dahlen S-E, Djukanovic R, Frey U, Gaga M, Gibson P, Hamid Q, Jajour NN, Mauad T, Sorkness RL, Teague WG. International ERS/ATS guidelines on definition, evaluation and treatment of severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2014; 43: 343–373.
4. Chipps BE, Haselkorn T, Paknis B, Ortiz B, Bleeker ER, Kianifard F, Foreman AJ, Szeffler SJ, Zeiger RS, Epidemiology and Natural History of Asthma: Outcomes and Treatment Regimens Study Group. More than a decade follow-up in patients with severe or difficult-to-treat asthma: The Epidemiology and Natural History of Asthma: Outcomes and Treatment Regimens (TENOR) II. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2018; 141: 1590-1597.e9.
5. Ortega HG, Liu MC, Pavord ID, Brusselle GG, FitzGerald JM, Chetta A, Humbert M, Katz LE, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Chaney P, MENSA Investigators. Mepolizumab treatment in patients with severe eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1198–1207.
6. Nasser S. An imperfect “PAST” Lessons learned from the National Review of Asthma Deaths (NRAD) UK. *Respir. Res.* 2016; 17: 87.
7. Healthcare Quality Improvement Partnership, Royal College of Physicians of London. Why asthma still kills: the National review of asthma deaths (NRAD). Confidential enquiry report May 2014 Confidential enquiry report May 2014. 2014.
8. Bousquet J, Khaltaev N, Cruz A, Yorgancioglu A, Chuchalin A. International European Respiratory Society/American Thoracic Society guidelines on severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2014; 44: 1377–1378.
9. Custovic A, Johnston SL, Pavord I, Gaga M, Fabbri L, Bel EH, Le Souëf P, Lötval J, Demoly P, Akdis CA, Ryan D, Mäkelä MJ, Martinez F, Holloway JW, Saglani S, O’Byrne P, Papi A, Sergejeva S, Magnan A, Del Giacco S, Kalayci O, Hamelmann E, Papadopoulos NG. EAACI position statement on asthma exacerbations and severe asthma. *Allergy* 2013; 68: 1520–1531.

10. Bush A, Zar HJ. WHO universal definition of severe asthma. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 11: 115–121.
11. Bousquet J, Mantzouranis E, Cruz AA, Ait-Khaled N, Baena-Cagnani CE, Bleecker ER, Brightling CE, Burney P, Bush A, Busse WW, Casale TB, Chan-Yeung M, Chen R, Chowdhury B, Chung KF, Dahl R, Drazen JM, Fabbri LM, Holgate ST, Kauffmann F, Haahtela T, Khaltaev N, Kiley JP, Masjedi MR, Mohammad Y, O'Byrne P, Partridge MR, Rabe KF, Togias A, van Weel C, et al. Uniform definition of asthma severity, control, and exacerbations: document presented for the World Health Organization Consultation on Severe Asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2010; 126: 926–938.
12. Reddel HK, Taylor DR, Bateman ED, Boulet L-P, Boushey HA, Busse WW, Casale TB, Chanez P, Enright PL, Gibson PG, de Jongste JC, Kerstjens HAM, Lazarus SC, Levy ML, O'Byrne PM, Partridge MR, Pavord ID, Sears MR, Sterk PJ, Stoloff SW, Sullivan SD, Szeffler SJ, Thomas MD, Wenzel SE, American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society Task Force on Asthma Control and Exacerbations. An official American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society statement: asthma control and exacerbations: standardizing endpoints for clinical asthma trials and clinical practice. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2009; 180: 59–99.
13. Miller MK, Lee JH, Blanc PD, Pasta DJ, Gujrathi S, Barron H, Wenzel SE, Weiss ST, TENOR Study Group. TENOR risk score predicts healthcare in adults with severe or difficult-to-treat asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2006; 28: 1145–1155.
14. Price DB, Trudo F, Voorham J, Xu X, Kerkhof M, Ling Zhi Jie J, Tran TN. Adverse outcomes from initiation of systemic corticosteroids for asthma: long-term observational study. *J Asthma Allergy* 2018; 11: 193–204.
15. O'Byrne PM, Pedersen S, Lamm CJ, Tan WC, Busse WW, START Investigators Group. Severe exacerbations and decline in lung function in asthma. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2009; 179: 19–24.
16. Green RH, Brightling CE, McKenna S, Hargadon B, Parker D, Bradding P, Wardlaw AJ, Pavord ID. Asthma exacerbations and sputum eosinophil counts: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; 360: 1715–1721.
17. Pauwels RA, Löfdahl CG, Postma DS, Tattersfield AE, O'Byrne P, Barnes PJ, Ullman A. Effect of inhaled formoterol and budesonide on exacerbations of asthma. Formoterol and Corticosteroids Establishing Therapy (FACET) International Study Group. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 1997; 337: 1405–1411.
18. Jayaram L, Pizzichini MM, Cook RJ, Boulet L-P, Lemièrre C, Pizzichini E, Cartier A, Hussack P, Goldsmith CH, Laviolette M, Parameswaran K, Hargreave FE. Determining asthma treatment by monitoring sputum cell counts: effect on exacerbations. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2006; 27: 483–494.
19. Demoly P, Crestani B, Leroyer C, Magnan A, Mounedji N, Humbert M. Control and exacerbation of asthma: a survey of more than 3000 French physicians. *Allergy* 2004; 59: 920–926.
20. Fuhlbrigge A, Peden D, Apter AJ, Boushey HA, Camargo CA, Gern J, Heymann PW, Martinez FD, Mauger D, Teague WG, Blaisdell C. Asthma outcomes: exacerbations. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2012; 129: S34–48.

- 1  
2  
3 21. Castro M, Rubin AS, Laviolette M, Fiterman J, De Andrade Lima M, Shah PL, Fiss E,  
4 Olivenstein R, Thomson NC, Niven RM, Pavord ID, Simoff M, Duhamel DR, McEvoy C,  
5 Barbers R, Ten Hacken NHT, Wechsler ME, Holmes M, Phillips MJ, Erzurum S, Lunn W,  
6 Israel E, Jarjour N, Kraft M, Shargill NS, Quiring J, Berry SM, Cox G, AIR2 Trial Study  
7 Group. Effectiveness and safety of bronchial thermoplasty in the treatment of severe  
8 asthma: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled clinical trial. *Am. J.*  
9 *Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2010; 181: 116–124.  
10  
11 22. Murphy VE, Clifton VL, Gibson PG. The effect of cigarette smoking on asthma control  
12 during exacerbations in pregnant women. *Thorax* 2010; 65: 739–744.  
13  
14 23. Sont JK, Willems LN, Bel EH, van Krieken JH, Vandenbroucke JP, Sterk PJ. Clinical  
15 control and histopathologic outcome of asthma when using airway  
16 hyperresponsiveness as an additional guide to long-term treatment. The AMPUL  
17 Study Group. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 1999; 159: 1043–1051.  
18  
19 24. Petsky HL, Cates CJ, Li A, Kynaston JA, Turner C, Chang AB. Tailored interventions  
20 based on exhaled nitric oxide versus clinical symptoms for asthma in children and  
21 adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; : CD006340.  
22  
23 25. Smith AD, Cowan JO, Brassett KP, Herbison GP, Taylor DR. Use of exhaled nitric oxide  
24 measurements to guide treatment in chronic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2005; 352:  
25 2163–2173.  
26  
27 26. Szeffler SJ, Mitchell H, Sorkness CA, Gergen PJ, O'Connor GT, Morgan WJ, Kattan M,  
28 Pongracic JA, Teach SJ, Bloomberg GR, Eggleston PA, Gruchalla RS, Kercksmar CM, Liu  
29 AH, Wildfire JJ, Curry MD, Busse WW. Management of asthma based on exhaled nitric  
30 oxide in addition to guideline-based treatment for inner-city adolescents and young  
31 adults: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008; 372: 1065–1072.  
32  
33 27. Powell H, Murphy VE, Taylor DR, Hensley MJ, McCaffery K, Giles W, Clifton VL, Gibson  
34 PG. Management of asthma in pregnancy guided by measurement of fraction of  
35 exhaled nitric oxide: a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2011; 378:  
36 983–990.  
37  
38 28. Petsky HL, Cates CJ, Kew KM, Chang AB. Tailoring asthma treatment on eosinophilic  
39 markers (exhaled nitric oxide or sputum eosinophils): a systematic review and meta-  
40 analysis. *Thorax* 2018; 73: 1110–1119.  
41  
42 29. Yii ACA, Tan JHY, Lapperre TS, Chan AKW, Low SY, Ong TH, Tan KL, Chotirmall SH,  
43 Sterk PJ, Koh MS. Long-term future risk of severe exacerbations: Distinct 5-year  
44 trajectories of problematic asthma. *Allergy* 2017; 72: 1398–1405.  
45  
46 30. Miller MK, Lee JH, Miller DP, Wenzel SE. Recent asthma exacerbations: A key  
47 predictor of future exacerbations. *Respiratory Medicine* 2007; 101: 481–489.  
48  
49 31. Heikkilä K, Madsen IEH, Nyberg ST, Fransson EI, Westerlund H, Westerholm PJM,  
50 Virtanen M, Vahtera J, Väänänen A, Theorell T, Suominen SB, Shipley MJ, Salo P,  
51 Rugulies R, Pentti J, Pejtersen JH, Oksanen T, Nordin M, Nielsen ML, Kouvonen A,  
52 Koskinen A, Koskenvuo M, Knutsson A, Ferrie JE, Dragano N, Burr H, Borritz M,  
53 Bjorner JB, Alfredsson L, Batty GD, et al. Job strain and the risk of severe asthma  
54 exacerbations: a meta-analysis of individual-participant data from 100 000 European  
55 men and women. *Allergy* 2014; 69: 775–783.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



- 1  
2  
3 32. Bjermer L. The role of small airway disease in asthma. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2014; 20:  
4 23–30.  
5  
6 33. Gelb AF, Schein A, Nussbaum E, Shinar CM, Aelony Y, Aharonian H, Zamel N. Risk  
7 factors for near-fatal asthma. *Chest* 2004; 126: 1138–1146.  
8  
9 34. Alvarez GG, Fitzgerald JM. A systematic review of the psychological risk factors  
10 associated with near fatal asthma or fatal asthma. *Respiration* 2007; 74: 228–236.  
11  
12 35. Alvarez GG, Schulzer M, Jung D, Fitzgerald JM. A systematic review of risk factors  
13 associated with near-fatal and fatal asthma. *Can. Respir. J.* 2005; 12: 265–270.  
14  
15 36. Butler C, Heaney LG. Risk factors of frequent exacerbations in difficult-to-treat  
16 asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2006; 27: 1324–1325; author reply 1325–1326.  
17  
18 37. de Groot JC, Amelink M, de Nijs SB, Plaat R, Reitsma BH, Storm H, Bel EHD, Ten Brinke  
19 A. Risk factors for frequent severe exacerbations in late-onset eosinophilic asthma.  
20 *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2015; 192: 899–902.  
21  
22 38. Green RM, Custovic A, Sanderson G, Hunter J, Johnston SL, Woodcock A. Synergism  
23 between allergens and viruses and risk of hospital admission with asthma: case-  
24 control study. *BMJ* 2002; 324: 763.  
25  
26 39. Gonzalez-Barcala F-J, Calvo-Alvarez U, Garcia-Sanz M-T, Bourdin A, Pose-Reino A,  
27 Carreira J-M, Moure-Gonzalez J-D, Garcia-Couceiro N, Valdes-Cuadrado L, Muñoz X.  
28 Characteristics and prognosis of near-fatal asthma exacerbations. *Am. J. Med. Sci.*  
29 2015; 350: 98–102.  
30  
31 40. Jackson DJ, Sykes A, Mallia P, Johnston SL. Asthma exacerbations: origin, effect, and  
32 prevention. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2011; 128: 1165–1174.  
33  
34 41. Martinez-Moragón E, Plaza V, Serrano J, Picado C, Galdiz JB, López-Viña A, Sanchis J.  
35 Near-fatal asthma related to menstruation. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2004; 113: 242–  
36 244.  
37  
38 42. Kupczyk M, Haque S, Sterk PJ, Niżankowska-Mogilnicka E, Papi A, Bel EH, Chanez P,  
39 Dahlén B, Gaga M, Gjomarkaj M, Howarth PH, Johnston SL, Joos GF, Kannies F,  
40 Tzortzaki E, James A, Middelveld RJM, Dahlén S-E, BIOAIR investigators. Detection of  
41 exacerbations in asthma based on electronic diary data: results from the 1-year  
42 prospective BIOAIR study. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 611–618.  
43  
44 43. Tattersfield AE, Postma DS, Barnes PJ, Svensson K, Bauer CA, O’Byrne PM, Löfdahl CG,  
45 Pauwels RA, Ullman A. Exacerbations of asthma: a descriptive study of 425 severe  
46 exacerbations. The FACET International Study Group. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*  
47 1999; 160: 594–599.  
48  
49 44. Romagnoli M, Caramori G, Braccioni F, Ravenna F, Barreiro E, Siafakas NM, Vignola  
50 AM, Chanez P, Fabbri LM, Papi A, ENFUMOSA Study Group. Near-fatal asthma  
51 phenotype in the ENFUMOSA Cohort. *Clin. Exp. Allergy* 2007; 37: 552–557.  
52  
53 45. Honkoop PJ, Simpson A, Bonini M, Snoeck-Stroband JB, Meah S, Fan Chung K, Usmani  
54 OS, Fowler S, Sont JK. MyAirCoach: the use of home-monitoring and mHealth systems  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 to predict deterioration in asthma control and the occurrence of asthma  
4 exacerbations; study protocol of an observational study. *BMJ Open* 2017; 7: e013935.  
5
- 6 46. Bateman ED, Buhl R, O'Byrne PM, Humbert M, Reddel HK, Sears MR, Jenkins C,  
7 Harrison TW, Quirce S, Peterson S, Eriksson G. Development and validation of a novel  
8 risk score for asthma exacerbations: The risk score for exacerbations. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
9 *Immunol.* 2015; 135: 1457-1464.e4.  
10
- 11 47. Bateman ED, Reddel HK, Eriksson G, Peterson S, Ostlund O, Sears MR, Jenkins C,  
12 Humbert M, Buhl R, Harrison TW, Quirce S, O'Byrne PM. Overall asthma control: the  
13 relationship between current control and future risk. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2010;  
14 125: 600–608, 608.e1-608.e6.  
15
- 16 48. Jia CE, Zhang HP, Lv Y, Liang R, Jiang YQ, Powell H, Fu JJ, Wang L, Gibson PG, Wang G.  
17 The Asthma Control Test and Asthma Control Questionnaire for assessing asthma  
18 control: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 131:  
19 695–703.  
20
- 21 49. Sato R, Tomita K, Sano H, Ichihashi H, Yamagata S, Sano A, Yamagata T, Miyara T,  
22 Iwanaga T, Muraki M, Tohda Y. The Strategy for Predicting Future Exacerbation of  
23 Asthma Using a Combination of the Asthma Control Test and Lung Function Test.  
24 *Journal of Asthma* 2009; 46: 677–682.  
25
- 26 50. Stern G, de Jongste J, van der Valk R, Baraldi E, Carraro S, Thamrin C, Frey U.  
27 Fluctuation phenotyping based on daily fraction of exhaled nitric oxide values in  
28 asthmatic children. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology* 2011; 128: 293–300.  
29
- 30 51. McFadden ER, Strauss L, Hejal R, Galan G, Dixon L. Comparison of two dosage  
31 regimens of albuterol in acute asthma. *The American Journal of Medicine* 1998; 105:  
32 12–17.  
33
- 34 52. Turner MO, Noertjojo K, Vedal S, Bai T, Crump S, Fitzgerald JM. Risk factors for near-  
35 fatal asthma. A case-control study in hospitalized patients with asthma. *Am. J. Respir.*  
36 *Crit. Care Med.* 1998; 157: 1804–1809.  
37
- 38 53. Loymans RJB, Honkoop PJ, Termeer EH, Snoeck-Stroband JB, Assendelft WJJ,  
39 Schermer TRJ, Chung KF, Sousa AR, Sterk PJ, Reddel HK, Sont JK, Ter Riet G.  
40 Identifying patients at risk for severe exacerbations of asthma: development and  
41 external validation of a multivariable prediction model. *Thorax* 2016; 71: 838–846.  
42
- 43 54. Denlinger LC, Phillips BR, Ramratnam S, Ross K, Bhakta NR, Cardet JC, Castro M,  
44 Peters SP, Phipatanakul W, Aujla S, Bacharier LB, Bleecker ER, Comhair SAA,  
45 Coverstone A, DeBoer M, Erzurum SC, Fain SB, Fajt M, Fitzpatrick AM, Gaffin J, Gaston  
46 B, Hastie AT, Hawkins GA, Holguin F, Irani A-M, Israel E, Levy BD, Ly N, Meyers DA,  
47 Moore WC, et al. Inflammatory and Comorbid Features of Patients with Severe  
48 Asthma and Frequent Exacerbations. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2017; 195: 302–  
49 313.  
50
- 51 55. Murray CS. Study of modifiable risk factors for asthma exacerbations: virus infection  
52 and allergen exposure increase the risk of asthma hospital admissions in children.  
53 *Thorax* 2006; 61: 376–382.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 56. Panico L, Stuart B, Bartley M, Kelly Y. Asthma trajectories in early childhood:  
4 identifying modifiable factors. *PLoS One* 2014; 9: e111922.  
5  
6 57. Smith LA, Bokhour B, Hohman KH, Miroschnik I, Kleinman KP, Cohn E, Cortes DE,  
7 Galbraith A, Rand C, Lieu TA. Modifiable Risk Factors for Suboptimal Control and  
8 Controller Medication Underuse Among Children With Asthma. *PEDIATRICS* 2008;  
9 122: 760–769.  
10  
11 58. Warman K, Silver EJ, Wood PR. Modifiable Risk Factors for Asthma Morbidity in Bronx  
12 Versus Other Inner-City Children. *Journal of Asthma* 2009; 46: 995–1000.  
13  
14 59. Eggo RM, Scott JG, Galvani AP, Meyers LA. Respiratory virus transmission dynamics  
15 determine timing of asthma exacerbation peaks: Evidence from a population-level  
16 model. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 2016; 113: 2194–2199.  
17  
18 60. Jamieson KC, Warner SM, Leigh R, Proud D. Rhinovirus in the Pathogenesis and  
19 Clinical Course of Asthma. *Chest* 2015; 148: 1508–1516.  
20  
21 61. Clarke DL, Davis NHE, Majithiya JB, Piper SC, Lewis A, Sleeman MA, Corkill DJ, May RD.  
22 Development of a mouse model mimicking key aspects of a viral asthma  
23 exacerbation. *Clinical Science* 2014; 126: 567–580.  
24  
25 62. Gavala ML, Bertics PJ, Gern JE. Rhinoviruses, allergic inflammation, and asthma.  
26 *Immunol. Rev.* 2011; 242: 69–90.  
27  
28 63. Price DB, Rigazio A, Campbell JD, Bleecker ER, Corrigan CJ, Thomas M, Wenzel SE,  
29 Wilson AM, Small MB, Gopalan G, Ashton VL, Burden A, Hillyer EV, Kerkhof M, Pavord  
30 ID. Blood eosinophil count and prospective annual asthma disease burden: a UK  
31 cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 849–858.  
32  
33 64. Bleecker ER, FitzGerald JM, Chanez P, Papi A, Weinstein SF, Barker P, Sproule S,  
34 Gilmartin G, Aurivillius M, Werkström V, Goldman M, SIROCCO study investigators.  
35 Efficacy and safety of benralizumab for patients with severe asthma uncontrolled  
36 with high-dosage inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting  $\beta$ 2-agonists (SIROCCO): a  
37 randomised, multicentre, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 2115–  
38 2127.  
39  
40 65. Pavord ID, Korn S, Howarth P, Bleecker ER, Buhl R, Keene ON, Ortega H, Chanez P.  
41 Mepolizumab for severe eosinophilic asthma (DREAM): a multicentre, double-blind,  
42 placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2012; 380: 651–659.  
43  
44 66. Nowak RM, Parker JM, Silverman RA, Rowe BH, Smithline H, Khan F, Fiening JP, Kim K,  
45 Molfino NA. A randomized trial of benralizumab, an antiinterleukin 5 receptor  $\alpha$   
46 monoclonal antibody, after acute asthma. *Am J Emerg Med* 2015; 33: 14–20.  
47  
48 67. Agusti A, Bel E, Thomas M, Vogelmeier C, Brusselle G, Holgate S, Humbert M, Jones P,  
49 Gibson PG, Vestbo J, Beasley R, Pavord ID. Treatable traits: toward precision medicine  
50 of chronic airway diseases. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2016; 47: 410–419.  
51  
52 68. Castro M, Corren J, Pavord ID, Maspero J, Wenzel S, Rabe KF, Busse WW, Ford L, Sher  
53 L, FitzGerald JM, Katelaris C, Tohda Y, Zhang B, Staudinger H, Pirozzi G, Amin N, Ruddy  
54 M, Akinlade B, Khan A, Chao J, Martincova R, Graham NMH, Hamilton JD, Swanson  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 BN, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Teper A. Dupilumab Efficacy and Safety in Moderate-to-  
4 Severe Uncontrolled Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 2486–2496.  
5  
6 69. Rabe KF, Nair P, Brusselle G, Maspero JF, Castro M, Sher L, Zhu H, Hamilton JD,  
7 Swanson BN, Khan A, Chao J, Staudinger H, Pirozzi G, Antoni C, Amin N, Ruddy M,  
8 Akinlade B, Graham NMH, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Teper A. Efficacy and Safety of  
9 Dupilumab in Glucocorticoid-Dependent Severe Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378:  
10 2475–2485.  
11  
12 70. Reddel HK, Bateman ED, Becker A, Boulet L-P, Cruz AA, Drazen JM, Haahtela T, Hurd  
13 SS, Inoue H, de Jongste JC, Lemanske RF, Levy ML, O'Byrne PM, Paggiaro P, Pedersen  
14 SE, Pizzichini E, Soto-Quiroz M, Szeffler SJ, Wong GWK, FitzGerald JM. A summary of  
15 the new GINA strategy: a roadmap to asthma control. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2015; 46: 622–  
16 639.  
17  
18 71. Bønnelykke K, Sleiman P, Nielsen K, Kreiner-Møller E, Mercader JM, Belgrave D, den  
19 Dekker HT, Husby A, Sevelsted A, Faura-Tellez G, Mortensen LJ, Paternoster L, Flaaten  
20 R, Mølgaard A, Smart DE, Thomsen PF, Rasmussen MA, Bonàs-Guarch S, Holst C, Nohr  
21 EA, Yadav R, March ME, Blicher T, Lackie PM, Jaddoe VVW, Simpson A, Holloway JW,  
22 Duijts L, Custovic A, Davies DE, et al. A genome-wide association study identifies  
23 CDHR3 as a susceptibility locus for early childhood asthma with severe exacerbations.  
24 *Nat. Genet.* 2014; 46: 51–55.  
25  
26 72. McGeachie MJ, Wu AC, Tse SM, Clemmer GL, Sordillo J, Himes BE, Lasky-Su J, Chase  
27 RP, Martinez FD, Weeke P, Shaffer CM, Xu H, Denny JC, Roden DM, Panettieri RA,  
28 Raby BA, Weiss ST, Tantisira KG. CTNNA3 and SEMA3D: Promising loci for asthma  
29 exacerbation identified through multiple genome-wide association studies. *J. Allergy*  
30 *Clin. Immunol.* 2015; 136: 1503–1510.  
31  
32 73. Grotenboer NS, Ketelaar ME, Koppelman GH, Nawijn MC. Decoding asthma:  
33 translating genetic variation in IL33 and IL1RL1 into disease pathophysiology. *J.*  
34 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 131: 856–865.  
35  
36 74. Ober C, Yao T-C. The genetics of asthma and allergic disease: a 21st century  
37 perspective. *Immunol. Rev.* 2011; 242: 10–30.  
38  
39 75. Torgerson DG, Ampleford EJ, Chiu GY, Gauderman WJ, Gignoux CR, Graves PE, Himes  
40 BE, Levin AM, Mathias RA, Hancock DB, Baurley JW, Eng C, Stern DA, Celedón JC,  
41 Rafaels N, Capurso D, Conti DV, Roth LA, Soto-Quiros M, Togiias A, Li X, Myers RA,  
42 Romieu I, Van Den Berg DJ, Hu D, Hansel NN, Hernandez RD, Israel E, Salam MT,  
43 Galanter J, et al. Meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies of asthma in  
44 ethnically diverse North American populations. *Nat. Genet.* 2011; 43: 887–892.  
45  
46 76. Schuijs MJ, Willart MA, Vergote K, Gras D, Deswarte K, Ege MJ, Madeira FB, Beyaert R,  
47 van Loo G, Bracher F, von Mutius E, Chanez P, Lambrecht BN, Hammad H. Farm dust  
48 and endotoxin protect against allergy through A20 induction in lung epithelial cells.  
49 *Science* 2015; 349: 1106–1110.  
50  
51 77. Meyers DA, Bleecker ER, Holloway JW, Holgate ST. Asthma genetics and personalised  
52 medicine. *Lancet Respir Med* 2014; 2: 405–415.  
53  
54 78. Wan Yi, Shrine NRG, Soler Artigas M, Wain LV, Blakey JD, Moffatt MF, Bush A, Chung  
55 KF, Cookson WOCM, Strachan DP, Heaney L, Al-Momani B a. H, Mansur AH, Manney  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 S, Thomson NC, Chaudhuri R, Brightling CE, Bafadhel M, Singapuri A, Niven R,  
4 Simpson A, Holloway JW, Howarth PH, Hui J, Musk AW, James AL, Australian Asthma  
5 Genetics Consortium, Brown MA, Baltic S, Ferreira M a. R, et al. Genome-wide  
6 association study to identify genetic determinants of severe asthma. *Thorax* 2012; 67:  
7 762–768.  
8
- 9 79. Moffatt MF, Gut IG, Demenais F, Strachan DP, Bouzigon E, Heath S, von Mutius E,  
10 Farrall M, Lathrop M, Cookson WOCM, GABRIEL Consortium. A large-scale,  
11 consortium-based genomewide association study of asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2010;  
12 363: 1211–1221.  
13
- 14 80. Wenzel SE, Balzar S, Ampleford E, Hawkins GA, Busse WW, Calhoun WJ, Castro M,  
15 Chung KF, Erzurum S, Gaston B, Israel E, Teague WG, Curran-Everett D, Meyers DA,  
16 Bleecker ER. IL4R alpha mutations are associated with asthma exacerbations and  
17 mast cell/IgE expression. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2007; 175: 570–576.  
18
- 19 81. Slager RE, Otulana BA, Hawkins GA, Yen YP, Peters SP, Wenzel SE, Meyers DA,  
20 Bleecker ER. IL-4 receptor polymorphisms predict reduction in asthma exacerbations  
21 during response to an anti-IL-4 receptor  $\alpha$  antagonist. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2012;  
22 130: 516-522.e4.  
23
- 24 82. Dahlin A, Denny J, Roden DM, Brilliant MH, Ingram C, Kitchner TE, Linneman JG,  
25 Shaffer CM, Weeke P, Xu H, Kubo M, Tamari M, Clemmer GL, Ziniti J, McGeachie MJ,  
26 Tantisira KG, Weiss ST, Wu AC. CMTR1 is associated with increased asthma  
27 exacerbations in patients taking inhaled corticosteroids. *Immun Inflamm Dis* 2015; 3:  
28 350–359.  
29
- 30 83. Suissa S, Ernst P, Benayoun S, Baltzan M, Cai B. Low-dose inhaled corticosteroids and  
31 the prevention of death from asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2000; 343: 332–336.  
32
- 33 84. Levy ML. The national review of asthma deaths: what did we learn and what needs to  
34 change? *Breathe (Sheff)* 2015; 11: 14–24.  
35
- 36 85. Lötval J, Akdis CA, Bacharier LB, Bjermer L, Casale TB, Custovic A, Lemanske RF,  
37 Wardlaw AJ, Wenzel SE, Greenberger PA. Asthma endotypes: a new approach to  
38 classification of disease entities within the asthma syndrome. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
39 2011; 127: 355–360.  
40
- 41 86. Moore WC, Meyers DA, Wenzel SE, Teague WG, Li H, Li X, D’Agostino R, Castro M,  
42 Curran-Everett D, Fitzpatrick AM, Gaston B, Jarjour NN, Sorkness R, Calhoun WJ,  
43 Chung KF, Comhair SAA, Dweik RA, Israel E, Peters SP, Busse WW, Erzurum SC,  
44 Bleecker ER, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute’s Severe Asthma Research  
45 Program. Identification of asthma phenotypes using cluster analysis in the Severe  
46 Asthma Research Program. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2010; 181: 315–323.  
47
- 48 87. Lefaudeux D, De Meulder B, Loza MJ, Peffer N, Rowe A, Baribaud F, Bansal AT, Lutter  
49 R, Sousa AR, Corfield J, Pandis I, Bakke PS, Caruso M, Chanez P, Dahlén S-E, Fleming  
50 LJ, Fowler SJ, Horvath I, Krug N, Montuschi P, Sanak M, Sandstrom T, Shaw DE, Singer  
51 F, Sterk PJ, Roberts G, Adcock IM, Djukanovic R, Auffray C, Chung KF, et al. U-BIOPRED  
52 clinical adult asthma clusters linked to a subset of sputum omics. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
53 *Immunol.* 2017; 139: 1797–1807.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 88. Longo C, Bartlett G, Schuster T, Ducharme FM, MacGibbon B, Barnett TA. The obese-  
4 asthma phenotype in children: An exacerbating situation? *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
5 2018; 141: 1239-1249.e4.  
6  
7 89. Morjaria JB, Rigby AS, Morice AH. Asthma phenotypes: do cough and wheeze predict  
8 exacerbations in persistent asthma? *Eur. Respir. J.* 2017; 50.  
9  
10 90. Ghebre MA, Pang PH, Diver S, Desai D, Bafadhel M, Haldar K, Keadze T, Cohen S,  
11 Newbold P, Rapley L, Woods J, Rugman P, Pavord ID, Johnston SL, Barer M, May RD,  
12 Brightling CE. Biological exacerbation clusters demonstrate asthma and chronic  
13 obstructive pulmonary disease overlap with distinct mediator and microbiome  
14 profiles. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2018; 141: 2027-2036.e12.  
15  
16 91. Fricker M, Gibson PG, Powell H, Simpson JL, Yang IA, Upham JW, Reynolds PN, Hodge  
17 S, James AL, Jenkins C, Peters MJ, Marks GB, Baraket M, Baines KJ. A sputum 6-gene  
18 signature predicts future exacerbations of poorly controlled asthma. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
19 *Immunol.* 2019; .  
20  
21 92. Rothenberg ME, Hogan SP. The eosinophil. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 2006; 24: 147–174.  
22  
23 93. Doshi V, Shenoy S, Ganesh A, Lankala S, Henkle J. Near Fatal Asthma in an Inner City  
24 Population. *Am J Ther* 2016; 23: e1375–e1380.  
25  
26 94. Al-Dorzi HM, Al-Shammary HA, Al-Shareef SY, Tamim HM, Shammout K, Al Dawood A,  
27 Arabi YM. Risk factors, management and outcomes of patients admitted with near  
28 fatal asthma to a tertiary care hospital in Riyadh. *Ann Thorac Med* 2014; 9: 33–38.  
29  
30 95. Newth CJL, Meert KL, Clark AE, Moler FW, Zuppa AF, Berg RA, Pollack MM, Sward KA,  
31 Berger JT, Wessel DL, Harrison RE, Reardon J, Carcillo JA, Shanley TP, Holubkov R,  
32 Dean JM, Doctor A, Nicholson CE, Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child  
33 Health and Human Development Collaborative Pediatric Critical Care Research  
34 Network. Fatal and near-fatal asthma in children: the critical care perspective. *J.*  
35 *Pediatr.* 2012; 161: 214-221.e3.  
36  
37 96. Becker JM, Rogers J, Rossini G, Mirchandani H, D'Alonzo GE. Asthma deaths during  
38 sports: report of a 7-year experience. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2004; 113: 264–267.  
39  
40 97. Sunyer J, Basagaña X, Belmonte J, Antó JM. Effect of nitrogen dioxide and ozone on  
41 the risk of dying in patients with severe asthma. *Thorax* 2002; 57: 687–693.  
42  
43 98. Serrano-Pariente J, Rodrigo G, Fiz JA, Crespo A, Plaza V, High Risk Asthma Research  
44 Group. Identification and characterization of near-fatal asthma phenotypes by cluster  
45 analysis. *Allergy* 2015; 70: 1139–1147.  
46  
47 99. Dhuper S, Maggiore D, Chung V, Shim C. Profile of near-fatal asthma in an inner-city  
48 hospital. *Chest* 2003; 124: 1880–1884.  
49  
50 100. Schatz M, Hsu J-WY, Zeiger RS, Chen W, Dorenbaum A, Chipps BE, Haselkorn T.  
51 Phenotypes determined by cluster analysis in severe or difficult-to-treat asthma. *J.*  
52 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 133: 1549–1556.  
53  
54 101. D'Amato G, Liccardi G, D'Amato M, Holgate S. Environmental risk factors and allergic  
55 bronchial asthma. *Clin. Exp. Allergy* 2005; 35: 1113–1124.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 102. Boulet L-P, Vervloet D, Magar Y, Foster JM. Adherence: the goal to control asthma.  
4 *Clin. Chest Med.* 2012; 33: 405–417.  
5  
6 103. Williams LK, Peterson EL, Wells K, Ahmedani BK, Kumar R, Burchard EG, Chowdhry  
7 VK, Favro D, Lanfear DE, Pladevall M. Quantifying the proportion of severe asthma  
8 exacerbations attributable to inhaled corticosteroid nonadherence. *Journal of Allergy*  
9 *and Clinical Immunology* 2011; 128: 1185-1191.e2.  
10  
11 104. Hasegawa K, Brenner BE, Clark S, Camargo CA. Emergency department visits for acute  
12 asthma by adults who ran out of their inhaled medications. *Allergy and Asthma*  
13 *Proceedings* 2014; 35: 268–268.  
14  
15 105. Usmani OS, Lavorini F, Marshall J, Dunlop WCN, Heron L, Farrington E, Dekhuijzen R.  
16 Critical inhaler errors in asthma and COPD: a systematic review of impact on health  
17 outcomes. *Respir. Res.* 2018; 19: 10.  
18  
19 106. Björnsdóttir US, Gizurarson S, Sabale U. Potential negative consequences of non-  
20 consented switch of inhaled medications and devices in asthma patients. *Int. J. Clin.*  
21 *Pract.* 2013; 67: 904–910.  
22  
23 107. Serrano J. Alexithymia: a relevant psychological variable in near-fatal asthma.  
24 *European Respiratory Journal* 2006; 28: 296–302.  
25  
26 108. Halimi L, Pry R, Pithon G, Godard P, Varrin M, Chanez P. Severe asthma and  
27 adherence to peak flow monitoring: longitudinal assessment of psychological aspects.  
28 *J Psychosom Res* 2010; 69: 331–340.  
29  
30 109. Singh AK. Sex Differences Among Adults Presenting to the Emergency Department  
31 With Acute Asthma. *Archives of Internal Medicine* 1999; 159: 1237.  
32  
33 110. Zein JG, Erzurum SC. Asthma is Different in Women. *Current Allergy and Asthma*  
34 *Reports* [Internet] 2015 [cited 2017 Jul 24]; 15 Available from:  
35 <http://link.springer.com/10.1007/s11882-015-0528-y>.  
36  
37 111. Chandra D, Clark S, Camargo CA. Race/Ethnicity Differences in the Inpatient  
38 Management of Acute Asthma in the United States. *Chest* 2009; 135: 1527–1534.  
39  
40 112. El-Ekiaby A, Brianas L, Skowronski ME, Coreno AJ, Galan G, Kaeberlein FJ, Seitz RE,  
41 Villaba KD, Dickey-White H, McFadden ER. Impact of Race on the Severity of Acute  
42 Episodes of Asthma and Adrenergic Responsiveness. *American Journal of Respiratory*  
43 *and Critical Care Medicine* 2006; 174: 508–513.  
44  
45 113. De Simoni A, Horne R, Fleming L, Bush A, Griffiths C. What do adolescents with  
46 asthma really think about adherence to inhalers? Insights from a qualitative analysis  
47 of a UK online forum. *BMJ Open* 2017; 7: e015245.  
48  
49 114. Del Giacco SR, Cappai A, Gambula L, Cabras S, Perra S, Manconi PE, Carpiello B,  
50 Pinna F. The asthma-anxiety connection. *Respir Med* 2016; 120: 44–53.  
51  
52 115. Ciprandi G, Schiavetti I, Rindone E, Ricciardolo FLM. The impact of anxiety and  
53 depression on outpatients with asthma. *Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 2015; 115:  
54 408–414.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 116. Bardin PG, Price D, Chanez P, Humbert M, Bourdin A. Managing asthma in the era of  
4 biological therapies. *Lancet Respir Med* 2017; 5: 376–378.  
5  
6 117. Cea-Calvo L, Carmona L, Calvo-Alén J. The Challenge of Assessing Adherence to  
7 Subcutaneous Biological Drugs in Immune-Mediated Inflammatory Diseases. Letter to  
8 the Editor Regarding Michetti P, Weinman J, Mrowietz U, et al. *Adv Ther*  
9 (2017);34:91–108. doi:10.1007/s12325-016-0441-3. *Adv Ther* 2017; 34: 2173–2176.  
10  
11 118. Poureslami I, Shum J, Lester RT, Tavakoli H, Dorscheid DR, FitzGerald JM. A pilot  
12 randomized controlled trial on the impact of text messaging check-ins and a web-  
13 based asthma action plan versus a written action plan on asthma exacerbations. *J*  
14 *Asthma* 2018; : 1–13.  
15  
16 119. Chan AHY, Stewart AW, Harrison J, Camargo CA, Black PN, Mitchell EA. The effect of  
17 an electronic monitoring device with audiovisual reminder function on adherence to  
18 inhaled corticosteroids and school attendance in children with asthma: a randomised  
19 controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 210–219.  
20  
21 120. Foster JM, Usherwood T, Smith L, Sawyer SM, Xuan W, Rand CS, Reddel HK. Inhaler  
22 reminders improve adherence with controller treatment in primary care patients with  
23 asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 134: 1260-1268.e3.  
24  
25 121. James KM, Peebles RS, Hartert TV. Response to infections in patients with asthma and  
26 atopic disease: an epiphenomenon or reflection of host susceptibility? *J. Allergy Clin.*  
27 *Immunol.* 2012; 130: 343–351.  
28  
29 122. Jackson DJ, Gangnon RE, Evans MD, Roberg KA, Anderson EL, Pappas TE, Printz MC,  
30 Lee W-M, Shult PA, Reisdorf E, Carlson-Dakes KT, Salazar LP, DaSilva DF, Tisler CJ,  
31 Gern JE, Lemanske RF. Wheezing rhinovirus illnesses in early life predict asthma  
32 development in high-risk children. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2008; 178: 667–672.  
33  
34 123. Kusel MMH, de Klerk NH, Keadze T, Vohma V, Holt PG, Johnston SL, Sly PD. Early-life  
35 respiratory viral infections, atopic sensitization, and risk of subsequent development  
36 of persistent asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2007; 119: 1105–1110.  
37  
38 124. Carroll WD, Lenney W, Child F, Strange RC, Jones PW, Whyte MK, Primhak RA, Fryer  
39 AA. Asthma severity and atopy: how clear is the relationship? *Arch. Dis. Child.* 2006;  
40 91: 405–409.  
41  
42 125. Teach SJ, Gill MA, Togias A, Sorkness CA, Arbes SJ, Calatroni A, Wildfire JJ, Gergen PJ,  
43 Cohen RT, Pongracic JA, Kercksmar CM, Khurana Hershey GK, Gruchalla RS, Liu AH,  
44 Zoratti EM, Kattan M, Grindle KA, Gern JE, Busse WW, Szeffler SJ. Preseasonal  
45 treatment with either omalizumab or an inhaled corticosteroid boost to prevent fall  
46 asthma exacerbations. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2015; 136: 1476–1485.  
47  
48 126. Corne JM, Marshall C, Smith S, Schreiber J, Sanderson G, Holgate ST, Johnston SL.  
49 Frequency, severity, and duration of rhinovirus infections in asthmatic and non-  
50 asthmatic individuals: a longitudinal cohort study. *Lancet* 2002; 359: 831–834.  
51  
52 127. Bochkov YA, Watters K, Ashraf S, Griggs TF, Devries MK, Jackson DJ, Palmenberg AC,  
53 Gern JE. Cadherin-related family member 3, a childhood asthma susceptibility gene  
54 product, mediates rhinovirus C binding and replication. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*  
55 2015; 112: 5485–5490.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



- 1  
2  
3 128. Ducharme FM, Zemek R, Chauhan BF, Gravel J, Chalut D, Poonai N, Guertin M-C,  
4 Quach C, Blondeau L, Laberge S, DOORWAY research group of the Pediatric  
5 Emergency Research in Canada (PERC) network. Factors associated with failure of  
6 emergency department management in children with acute moderate or severe  
7 asthma: a prospective, multicentre, cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 990–  
8 998.  
9
- 10 129. Wark PAB, Johnston SL, Bucchieri F, Powell R, Puddicombe S, Laza-Stanca V, Holgate  
11 ST, Davies DE. Asthmatic bronchial epithelial cells have a deficient innate immune  
12 response to infection with rhinovirus. *J. Exp. Med.* 2005; 201: 937–947.  
13
- 14 130. Baraldo S, Contoli M, Bazzan E, Turato G, Padovani A, Marku B, Calabrese F, Caramori  
15 G, Ballarin A, Snijders D, Barbato A, Saetta M, Papi A. Deficient antiviral immune  
16 responses in childhood: distinct roles of atopy and asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
17 2012; 130: 1307–1314.  
18
- 19 131. Contoli M, Message SD, Laza-Stanca V, Edwards MR, Wark PAB, Bartlett NW, Kebabdz  
20 T, Mallia P, Stanciu LA, Parker HL, Slater L, Lewis-Antes A, Kon OM, Holgate ST, Davies  
21 DE, Kotenko SV, Papi A, Johnston SL. Role of deficient type III interferon-lambda  
22 production in asthma exacerbations. *Nat. Med.* 2006; 12: 1023–1026.  
23
- 24 132. Glanville N, Johnston SL. Challenges in developing a cross-serotype rhinovirus vaccine.  
25 *Curr Opin Virol* 2015; 11: 83–88.  
26
- 27 133. Djukanović R, Harrison T, Johnston SL, Gabbay F, Wark P, Thomson NC, Niven R, Singh  
28 D, Reddel HK, Davies DE, Marsden R, Boxall C, Dudley S, Plagnol V, Holgate ST, Monk  
29 P, INTERCIA Study Group. The effect of inhaled IFN- $\beta$  on worsening of asthma  
30 symptoms caused by viral infections. A randomized trial. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*  
31 2014; 190: 145–154.  
32
- 33 134. Henneberger PK, Mirabelli MC, Kogevinas M, Anto JM, Plana E, Dahlman-Hoglund A,  
34 Jarvis DL, Kromhout H, Lillienberg L, Norback D, Olivieri M, Radon K, Toren K, Urrutia  
35 I, Villani S, Zock JP. The occupational contribution to severe exacerbation of asthma.  
36 *European Respiratory Journal* 2010; 36: 743–750.  
37
- 38 135. Jie Y, Isa ZM, Jie X, Ju ZL, Ismail NH. Urban vs. Rural Factors That Affect Adult Asthma.  
39 In: Whitacre DM, editor. *Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*  
40 *Volume 226* [Internet] New York, NY: Springer New York; 2013 [cited 2017 Jul 26]. p.  
41 33–63 Available from: [http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-1-4614-6898-1\\_2](http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-1-4614-6898-1_2).  
42  
43
- 44 136. Spitzer WO, Suissa S, Ernst P, Horwitz RI, Habbick B, Cockcroft D, Boivin JF, McNutt M,  
45 Buist AS, Rebeck AS. The use of beta-agonists and the risk of death and near death  
46 from asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 1992; 326: 501–506.  
47
- 48 137. van Schayck CP, Bijl-Hofland ID, Cloosterman SGM, Folgering HTM, van der Elshout  
49 FJJ, Van Weel C. Potential masking effect on dyspnoea perception by short- and long-  
50 acting beta2-agonists in asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2002; 19: 240–245.  
51
- 52 138. Cockcroft DW, Sears MR. Are inhaled longacting  $\beta$ 2 agonists detrimental to asthma?  
53 *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: 339–346.  
54
- 55 139. Nelson HS, Weiss ST, Bleecker ER, Yancey SW, Dorinsky PM, SMART Study Group. The  
56 Salmeterol Multicenter Asthma Research Trial: a comparison of usual  
57

- 1  
2  
3 pharmacotherapy for asthma or usual pharmacotherapy plus salmeterol. *Chest* 2006;  
4 129: 15–26.  
5  
6 140. Drazen JM, Israel E, Boushey HA, Chinchilli VM, Fahy JV, Fish JE, Lazarus SC, Lemanske  
7 RF, Martin RJ, Peters SP, Sorkness C, Szeffler SJ. Comparison of regularly scheduled  
8 with as-needed use of albuterol in mild asthma. Asthma Clinical Research Network. *N.*  
9 *Engl. J. Med.* 1996; 335: 841–847.  
10  
11 141. Suissa S, Blais L, Ernst P. Patterns of increasing beta-agonist use and the risk of fatal  
12 or near-fatal asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 1994; 7: 1602–1609.  
13  
14 142. Ritchie AI, Singanayagam A, Wiater E, Edwards MR, Montminy M, Johnston SL.  $\beta$ -  
15 Agonists Enhance Asthma-Relevant Inflammatory Mediators in Human Airway  
16 Epithelial Cells. *Am. J. Respir. Cell Mol. Biol.* 2018; 58: 128–132.  
17  
18 143. Kim D, Cho S, Woo JA, Liggett SB. A CREB-mediated increase in miRNA let-7f during  
19 prolonged  $\beta$ -agonist exposure: a novel mechanism of  $\beta$ 2-adrenergic receptor down-  
20 regulation in airway smooth muscle. *FASEB J.* 2018; 32: 3680–3688.  
21  
22 144. Reddel H, Ware S, Marks G, Salome C, Jenkins C, Woolcock A. Differences between  
23 asthma exacerbations and poor asthma control. *Lancet* 1999; 353: 364–369.  
24  
25 145. Castillo JR, Peters SP, Busse WW. Asthma Exacerbations: Pathogenesis, Prevention,  
26 and Treatment. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2017; 5: 918–927.  
27  
28 146. Shim CS, Williams MH. Evaluation of the severity of asthma: patients versus  
29 physicians. *Am. J. Med.* 1980; 68: 11–13.  
30  
31 147. Carruthers DM, Harrison BD. Arterial blood gas analysis or oxygen saturation in the  
32 assessment of acute asthma? *Thorax* 1995; 50: 186–188.  
33  
34 148. Nowak RM, Tomlanovich MC, Sarkar DD, Kvale PA, Anderson JA. Arterial blood gases  
35 and pulmonary function testing in acute bronchial asthma. Predicting patient  
36 outcomes. *JAMA* 1983; 249: 2043–2046.  
37  
38 149. White CS, Cole RP, Lubetsky HW, Austin JH. Acute asthma. Admission chest  
39 radiography in hospitalized adult patients. *Chest* 1991; 100: 14–16.  
40  
41 150. Perrin K, Wijesinghe M, Healy B, Wadsworth K, Bowditch R, Bibby S, Baker T,  
42 Weatherall M, Beasley R. Randomised controlled trial of high concentration versus  
43 titrated oxygen therapy in severe exacerbations of asthma. *Thorax* 2011; 66: 937–  
44 941.  
45  
46 151. Rodrigo GJ. Oxygen treatment for acute severe asthma. Oxygen saturation may help  
47 identify patients in need of intensive management. *BMJ* 2001; 323: 1069.  
48  
49 152. Rodrigo GJ, Rodriguez Verde M, Peregalli V, Rodrigo C. Effects of short-term 28% and  
50 100% oxygen on PaCO<sub>2</sub> and peak expiratory flow rate in acute asthma: a randomized  
51 trial. *Chest* 2003; 124: 1312–1317.  
52  
53 153. Cates CJ, Welsh EJ, Rowe BH. Holding chambers (spacers) versus nebulisers for beta-  
54 agonist treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; : CD000052.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 154. Newman KB, Milne S, Hamilton C, Hall K. A comparison of albuterol administered by  
4 metered-dose inhaler and spacer with albuterol by nebulizer in adults presenting to  
5 an urban emergency department with acute asthma. *Chest* 2002; 121: 1036–1041.  
6  
7 155. Camargo CA, Spooner CH, Rowe BH. Continuous versus intermittent beta-agonists in  
8 the treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003; : CD001115.  
9  
10 156. Rodrigo GJ, Rodrigo C. Continuous vs intermittent beta-agonists in the treatment of  
11 acute adult asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Chest* 2002; 122: 160–  
12 165.  
13  
14 157. Shrestha M, Bidadi K, Gourlay S, Hayes J. Continuous vs intermittent albuterol, at high  
15 and low doses, in the treatment of severe acute asthma in adults. *Chest* 1996; 110:  
16 42–47.  
17  
18 158. Travers AH, Milan SJ, Jones AP, Camargo CA, Rowe BH. Addition of intravenous  
19 beta(2)-agonists to inhaled beta(2)-agonists for acute asthma. *Cochrane Database*  
20 *Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD010179.  
21  
22 159. Griffiths B, Ducharme FM. Combined inhaled anticholinergics and short-acting beta2-  
23 agonists for initial treatment of acute asthma in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*  
24 2013; : CD000060.  
25  
26 160. Rodrigo G, Rodrigo C, Burschtin O. A meta-analysis of the effects of ipratropium  
27 bromide in adults with acute asthma. *Am. J. Med.* 1999; 107: 363–370.  
28  
29 161. Stoodley RG, Aaron SD, Dales RE. The role of ipratropium bromide in the emergency  
30 management of acute asthma exacerbation: a metaanalysis of randomized clinical  
31 trials. *Ann Emerg Med* 1999; 34: 8–18.  
32  
33 162. Manser R, Reid D, Abramson M. Corticosteroids for acute severe asthma in  
34 hospitalised patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD001740.  
35  
36 163. Rowe BH, Spooner CH, Ducharme FM, Bretzlaff JA, Bota GW. Corticosteroids for  
37 preventing relapse following acute exacerbations of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst*  
38 *Rev* 2007; : CD000195.  
39  
40 164. Rowe BH, Spooner C, Ducharme FM, Bretzlaff JA, Bota GW. Early emergency  
41 department treatment of acute asthma with systemic corticosteroids. *Cochrane*  
42 *Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD002178.  
43  
44 165. Marquette CH, Stach B, Cardot E, Bervar JF, Saulnier F, Lafitte JJ, Goldstein P, Wallaert  
45 B, Tonnel AB. High-dose and low-dose systemic corticosteroids are equally efficient in  
46 acute severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 1995; 8: 22–27.  
47  
48 166. Harrison BD, Stokes TC, Hart GJ, Vaughan DA, Ali NJ, Robinson AA. Need for  
49 intravenous hydrocortisone in addition to oral prednisolone in patients admitted to  
50 hospital with severe asthma without ventilatory failure. *Lancet* 1986; 1: 181–184.  
51  
52 167. Ratto D, Alfaro C, Sipsy J, Glovsky MM, Sharma OP. Are intravenous corticosteroids  
53 required in status asthmaticus? *JAMA* 1988; 260: 527–529.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 168. Jones AM, Munavvar M, Vail A, Aldridge RE, Hopkinson L, Rayner C, O'Driscoll BR. Prospective, placebo-controlled trial of 5 vs 10 days of oral prednisolone in acute adult asthma. *Respir Med* 2002; 96: 950–954.
- 4  
5  
6  
7 169. O'Driscoll BR, Kalra S, Wilson M, Pickering CA, Carroll KB, Woodcock AA. Double-blind trial of steroid tapering in acute asthma. *Lancet* 1993; 341: 324–327.
- 8  
9  
10 170. Edmonds ML, Milan SJ, Camargo CA, Pollack CV, Rowe BH. Early use of inhaled corticosteroids in the emergency department treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD002308.
- 11  
12  
13  
14 171. Kew KM, Kirtchuk L, Michell CI. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating adults with acute asthma in the emergency department. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; : CD010909.
- 15  
16  
17  
18 172. Rowe BH, Bretzlaff JA, Bourdon C, Bota GW, Camargo CA. Intravenous magnesium sulfate treatment for acute asthma in the emergency department: a systematic review of the literature. *Ann Emerg Med* 2000; 36: 181–190.
- 19  
20  
21  
22 173. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR-3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma-Summary Report 2007. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2007; 120: S94-138.
- 23  
24  
25  
26 174. Charriot J, Volpato M, Sueh C, Boissin C, Gamez AS, Vachier I, Halimi L, Chanez P, Bourdin A. Asthma: treatment and prevention of pulmonary exacerbations. In: Burgel P-R, Contoli M, López-Campos JL, editors. *Acute Exacerbations of Pulmonary Diseases* [Internet] European Respiratory Society; 2017 [cited 2018 Sep 21]. p. 129–146 Available from: <http://erspublications.com/lookup/doi/10.1183/2312508X.10016416>.
- 27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34 175. França-Pinto A, Mendes FAR, de Carvalho-Pinto RM, Agondi RC, Cukier A, Stelmach R, Saraiva-Romanholo BM, Kalil J, Martins MA, Giavina-Bianchi P, Carvalho CRF. Aerobic training decreases bronchial hyperresponsiveness and systemic inflammation in patients with moderate or severe asthma: a randomised controlled trial. *Thorax* 2015; 70: 732–739.
- 35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40 176. Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma (EPR-3) | National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from: <https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/guidelines-for-diagnosis-management-of-asthma>.
- 41  
42  
43  
44  
45 177. BTS/SIGN British guideline on the management of asthma | British Thoracic Society | Better lung health for all [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from: <https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/standards-of-care/guidelines/btssign-british-guideline-on-the-management-of-asthma/>.
- 46  
47  
48  
49  
50 178. McKeever T, Mortimer K, Wilson A, Walker S, Brightling C, Skeggs A, Pavord I, Price D, Duley L, Thomas M, Bradshaw L, Higgins B, Haydock R, Mitchell E, Devereux G, Harrison T. Quadrupling Inhaled Glucocorticoid Dose to Abort Asthma Exacerbations. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 902–910.
- 51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 179. Volmer T, Effenberger T, Trautner C, Buhl R. Consequences of long-term OCS therapy  
4 and its side effects in severe asthma in adults – A focused review of the impact data  
5 in the literature. *European Respiratory Journal* 2018; : 1800703.  
6  
7 180. Sweeney J, Brightling CE, Menzies-Gow A, Niven R, Patterson CC, Heaney LG, British  
8 Thoracic Society Difficult Asthma Network. Clinical management and outcome of  
9 refractory asthma in the UK from the British Thoracic Society Difficult Asthma  
10 Registry. *Thorax* 2012; 67: 754–756.  
11  
12 181. Mancinelli L, Navarro L, Sharma OP. Intramuscular high-dose triamcinolone acetonide  
13 in the treatment of severe chronic asthma. *West. J. Med.* 1997; 167: 322–329.  
14  
15 182. Pavord ID, Brightling CE, Woltmann G, Wardlaw AJ. Non-eosinophilic corticosteroid  
16 unresponsive asthma. *Lancet* 1999; 353: 2213–2214.  
17  
18 183. Sputum eosinophilia and short-term response to prednisolone in chronic obstructive  
19 pulmonary disease: a randomised controlled trial. - PubMed - NCBI [Internet]. [cited  
20 2018 Sep 21]. Available from: [https://www.ncbi.nlm-nih-](https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih-gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531)  
21 [gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531](https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih-gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531).  
22  
23 184. Pratter MR, Brightling CE, Boulet LP, Irwin RS. An empiric integrative approach to the  
24 management of cough: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest* 2006;  
25 129: 222S-231S.  
26  
27 185. Chlumský J, Striz I, Terl M, Vondracek J. Strategy aimed at reduction of sputum  
28 eosinophils decreases exacerbation rate in patients with asthma. *J. Int. Med. Res.*  
29 2006; 34: 129–139.  
30  
31 186. O’Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, Bateman ED, Barnes PJ, Zhong N, Keen C, Jorup C,  
32 Lamarca R, Ivanov S, Reddel HK. Inhaled Combined Budesonide-Formoterol as  
33 Needed in Mild Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 1865–1876.  
34  
35 187. Bateman ED, Reddel HK, O’Byrne PM, Barnes PJ, Zhong N, Keen C, Jorup C, Lamarca R,  
36 Siwek-Posluszna A, FitzGerald JM. As-Needed Budesonide-Formoterol versus  
37 Maintenance Budesonide in Mild Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 1877–1887.  
38  
39 188. Beasley R, Holliday M, Reddel HK, Braithwaite I, Ebmeier S, Hancox RJ, Harrison T,  
40 Houghton C, Oldfield K, Papi A, Pavord ID, Williams M, Weatherall M, Novel START  
41 Study Team. Controlled Trial of Budesonide-Formoterol as Needed for Mild Asthma.  
42 *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2019; 380: 2020–2030.  
43  
44 189. FDA Removes Boxed Warning from Long-Acting Beta Agonists (LABAs) and Inhaled  
45 Corticosteroids (ICS) | NAMDRG [Internet]. [cited 2018 Oct 19]. Available from:  
46 [https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-](https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics)  
47 [agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics](https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics).  
48  
49 190. Kerstjens HAM, Engel M, Dahl R, Paggiaro P, Beck E, Vandewalker M, Sigmund R,  
50 Seibold W, Moroni-Zentgraf P, Bateman ED. Tiotropium in asthma poorly controlled  
51 with standard combination therapy. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2012; 367: 1198–1207.  
52  
53 191. Anderson DE, Kew KM, Boyter AC. Long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA) added  
54 to inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) versus the same dose of ICS alone for adults with  
55 asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; : CD011397.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 192. Miligkos M, Bannuru RR, Alkofide H, Kher SR, Schmid CH, Balk EM. Leukotriene-  
4 receptor antagonists versus placebo in the treatment of asthma in adults and  
5 adolescents: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann. Intern. Med.* 2015; 163:  
6 756–767.  
7
- 8 193. Nie H, Zhang G, Liu M, Ding X, Huang Y, Hu S. Efficacy of theophylline plus  
9 salmeterol/fluticasone propionate combination therapy in patients with asthma.  
10 *Respir Med* 2013; 107: 347–354.  
11
- 12 194. Gibson PG, Yang IA, Upham JW, Reynolds PN, Hodge S, James AL, Jenkins C, Peters  
13 MJ, Marks GB, Baraket M, Powell H, Taylor SL, Leong LEX, Rogers GB, Simpson JL.  
14 Effect of azithromycin on asthma exacerbations and quality of life in adults with  
15 persistent uncontrolled asthma (AMAZES): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-  
16 controlled trial. *Lancet* 2017; 390: 659–668.  
17
- 18 195. Brusselle GG, Vanderstichele C, Jordens P, Deman R, Slabbynck H, Ringoet V,  
19 Verleden G, Demedts IK, Verhamme K, Delporte A, Demeyere B, Claeys G, Boelens J,  
20 Padalko E, Verschakelen J, Van Maele G, Deschepper E, Joos GFP. Azithromycin for  
21 prevention of exacerbations in severe asthma (AZISAST): a multicentre randomised  
22 double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 322–329.  
23
- 24 196. Agbetile J, Bourne M, Fairs A, Hargadon B, Desai D, Broad C, Morley J, Bradding P,  
25 Brightling CE, Green RH, Haldar P, Pashley CH, Pavord ID, Wardlaw AJ. Effectiveness  
26 of voriconazole in the treatment of *Aspergillus fumigatus*-associated asthma (EVITA3  
27 study). *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 134: 33–39.  
28
- 29 197. Evans DJ, Cullinan P, Geddes DM. Cyclosporin as an oral corticosteroid sparing agent  
30 in stable asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD002993.  
31
- 32 198. Davies H, Olson L, Gibson P. Methotrexate as a steroid sparing agent for asthma in  
33 adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2000; : CD000391.  
34
- 35 199. Woodcock A, Forster L, Matthews E, Martin J, Letley L, Vickers M, Britton J, Strachan  
36 D, Howarth P, Altmann D, Frost C, Custovic A, Medical Research Council General  
37 Practice Research Framework. Control of exposure to mite allergen and allergen-  
38 impermeable bed covers for adults with asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2003; 349: 225–236.  
39
- 40 200. Normansell R, Kew KM, Bridgman A-L. Sublingual immunotherapy for asthma.  
41 *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; : CD011293.  
42
- 43 201. ISRCTN - ISRCTN15124178: SoMOSA: Study of mechanisms of action of omalizumab in  
44 severe asthma [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
45 <http://www.isrctn.com/ISRCTN15124178>.  
46
- 47 202. Laminar Airflow in Severe Asthma for Exacerbation Reduction - 48 Month Follow-up. -  
48 Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
49 <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02813811>.  
50
- 51 203. Normansell R, Walker S, Milan SJ, Walters EH, Nair P. Omalizumab for asthma in  
52 adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; : CD003559.  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 204. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Hargadon B, Gupta S, Monteiro W, Sousa A, Marshall RP,  
4 Bradding P, Green RH, Wardlaw AJ, Pavord ID. Mepolizumab and exacerbations of  
5 refractory eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2009; 360: 973–984.  
6  
7 205. Chupp GL, Bradford ES, Albers FC, Bratton DJ, Wang-Jairaj J, Nelsen LM, Trevor JL,  
8 Magnan A, Ten Brinke A. Efficacy of mepolizumab add-on therapy on health-related  
9 quality of life and markers of asthma control in severe eosinophilic asthma (MUSCA):  
10 a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group, multicentre, phase  
11 3b trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2017; 5: 390–400.  
12  
13 206. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
14 Pavord ID. Oral Glucocorticoid-Sparing Effect of Mepolizumab in Eosinophilic Asthma.  
15 *New England Journal of Medicine* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
16  
17 207. Ortega HG, Yancey SW, Mayer B, Gunsoy NB, Keene ON, Bleecker ER, Brightling CE,  
18 Pavord ID. Severe eosinophilic asthma treated with mepolizumab stratified by  
19 baseline eosinophil thresholds: a secondary analysis of the DREAM and MENSA  
20 studies. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 549–556.  
21  
22 208. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Singapuri A, Hargadon B, Gupta S, Monteiro W, Bradding P,  
23 Green RH, Wardlaw AJ, Ortega H, Pavord ID. Outcomes after cessation of  
24 mepolizumab therapy in severe eosinophilic asthma: a 12-month follow-up analysis.  
25 *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 133: 921–923.  
26  
27 209. Lugogo N, Domingo C, Chanez P, Leigh R, Gilson MJ, Price RG, Yancey SW, Ortega HG.  
28 Long-term Efficacy and Safety of Mepolizumab in Patients With Severe Eosinophilic  
29 Asthma: A Multi-center, Open-label, Phase IIIb Study. *Clin Ther* 2016; 38: 2058-  
30 2070.e1.  
31  
32 210. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
33 Pavord ID, SIRIUS Investigators. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of mepolizumab in  
34 eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
35  
36 211. Castro M, Zangrilli J, Wechsler ME, Bateman ED, Brusselle GG, Bardin P, Murphy K,  
37 Maspero JF, O'Brien C, Korn S. Reslizumab for inadequately controlled asthma with  
38 elevated blood eosinophil counts: results from two multicentre, parallel, double-  
39 blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3:  
40 355–366.  
41  
42 212. Brusselle G, Canvin J, Weiss S, Sun SX, Buhl R. Stratification of eosinophilic asthma  
43 patients treated with reslizumab and GINA Step 4 or 5 therapy. *ERJ Open Res* 2017; 3.  
44  
45 213. FitzGerald JM, Bleecker ER, Nair P, Korn S, Ohta K, Lommatzsch M, Ferguson GT,  
46 Busse WW, Barker P, Sproule S, Gilmartin G, Werkström V, Aurivillius M, Goldman M,  
47 CALIMA study investigators. Benralizumab, an anti-interleukin-5 receptor  $\alpha$   
48 monoclonal antibody, as add-on treatment for patients with severe, uncontrolled,  
49 eosinophilic asthma (CALIMA): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase  
50 3 trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 2128–2141.  
51  
52 214. Nair P, Wenzel S, Rabe KF, Bourdin A, Lugogo NL, Kuna P, Barker P, Sproule S,  
53 Ponnarambil S, Goldman M, ZONDA Trial Investigators. Oral Glucocorticoid-Sparing  
54 Effect of Benralizumab in Severe Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2017; 376: 2448–2458.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 215. Goldman M, Hirsch I, Zangrilli JG, Newbold P, Xu X. The association between blood  
4 eosinophil count and benralizumab efficacy for patients with severe, uncontrolled  
5 asthma: subanalyses of the Phase III SIROCCO and CALIMA studies. *Curr Med Res Opin*  
6 2017; 33: 1605–1613.  
7
- 8 216. FitzGerald JM, Bleecker ER, Menzies-Gow A, Zangrilli JG, Hirsch I, Metcalfe P,  
9 Newbold P, Goldman M. Predictors of enhanced response with benralizumab for  
10 patients with severe asthma: pooled analysis of the SIROCCO and CALIMA studies.  
11 *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 51–64.  
12
- 13 217. Wechsler ME, Laviolette M, Rubin AS, Fiterman J, Lapa e Silva JR, Shah PL, Fiss E,  
14 Olivenstein R, Thomson NC, Niven RM, Pavord ID, Simoff M, Hales JB, McEvoy C,  
15 Slebos D-J, Holmes M, Phillips MJ, Erzurum SC, Hanania NA, Sumino K, Kraft M, Cox G,  
16 Serman DH, Hogarth K, Kline JN, Mansur AH, Louie BE, Leeds WM, Barbers RG, Austin  
17 JHM, et al. Bronchial thermoplasty: Long-term safety and effectiveness in patients  
18 with severe persistent asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 132: 1295–1302.  
19
- 20 218. Wenzel S, Ford L, Pearlman D, Spector S, Sher L, Skobieranda F, Wang L, Kirkesseli S,  
21 Rocklin R, Bock B, Hamilton J, Ming JE, Radin A, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Graham N,  
22 Pirozzi G. Dupilumab in persistent asthma with elevated eosinophil levels. *N. Engl. J.*  
23 *Med.* 2013; 368: 2455–2466.  
24
- 25 219. Wenzel S, Castro M, Corren J, Maspero J, Wang L, Zhang B, Pirozzi G, Sutherland ER,  
26 Evans RR, Joish VN, Eckert L, Graham NMH, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Louis-Tisserand  
27 M, Teper A. Dupilumab efficacy and safety in adults with uncontrolled persistent  
28 asthma despite use of medium-to-high-dose inhaled corticosteroids plus a long-acting  
29  $\beta$ 2 agonist: a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled pivotal phase 2b dose-  
30 ranging trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 31–44.  
31
- 32 220. Hanania NA, Korenblat P, Chapman KR, Bateman ED, Kopecky P, Paggiaro P,  
33 Yokoyama A, Olsson J, Gray S, Holweg CTJ, Eisner M, Asare C, Fischer SK, Peng K,  
34 Putnam WS, Matthews JG. Efficacy and safety of lebrikizumab in patients with  
35 uncontrolled asthma (LAVOLTA I and LAVOLTA II): replicate, phase 3, randomised,  
36 double-blind, placebo-controlled trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 781–796.  
37
- 38 221. Russell RJ, Chachi L, FitzGerald JM, Backer V, Olivenstein R, Titlestad IL, Ulrik CS,  
39 Harrison T, Singh D, Chaudhuri R, Leaker B, McGarvey L, Siddiqui S, Wang M,  
40 Braddock M, Nordenmark LH, Cohen D, Parikh H, Colice G, Brightling CE, MESOS study  
41 investigators. Effect of tralokinumab, an interleukin-13 neutralising monoclonal  
42 antibody, on eosinophilic airway inflammation in uncontrolled moderate-to-severe  
43 asthma (MESOS): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase  
44 2 trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 499–510.  
45
- 46 222. Corren J, Parnes JR, Wang L, Mo M, Roseti SL, Griffiths JM, van der Merwe R.  
47 Tezepelumab in Adults with Uncontrolled Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2017; 377: 936–  
48 946.  
49
- 50 223. Gonem S, Berair R, Singapuri A, Hartley R, Laurencin MFM, Bacher G, Holzhauser B,  
51 Bourne M, Mistry V, Pavord ID, Mansur AH, Wardlaw AJ, Siddiqui SH, Kay RA,  
52 Brightling CE. Fevipiprant, a prostaglandin D2 receptor 2 antagonist, in patients with  
53 persistent eosinophilic asthma: a single-centre, randomised, double-blind, parallel-  
54 group, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 699–707.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



- 1  
2  
3 224. Efficacy and Safety Study of GSK3772847 in Subjects With Moderately Severe Asthma  
4 - Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21].Available from:  
5 <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03207243>.  
6  
7 225. Study to Assess the Efficacy and Safety of CJM112 in Patients With Inadequately  
8 Controlled Severe Asthma - Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018  
9 Sep 21].Available from: <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03299686>.  
10  
11 226. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
12 Pavord ID, SIRIUS Investigators. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of mepolizumab in  
13 eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## ERS/EAACI Statement on severe exacerbations in asthma in adult: facts, priorities and key research questions

A. Bourdin, L. Bjermer, C. Brightling, G. Brusselle, P. Chanez, F. Chung, A. Custovic, Z. Diamant, S Diver, R. Djukanovic, D. Hamerlijnc, S. Johnston, F. Kanniess, N. Papadopoulos, A. Papi, R. Russell, D Ryan, K. Samitas, T. Thomy, E. Zervas, M Gaga.

### TASK-FORCE Sections and Members

Section no	Section title	Participants
<b>1</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	M. Gaga (leader), K. Samitas
<b>2</b>	<b>Triggers and risk factors</b>	A. Bourdin (leader)
2A	<i>Assessment of risk, What is cause and what is effect</i>	A. Bourdin
2B	<i>Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors &amp; Mathematical models</i>	F. Chung
2C	<i>Risk Factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes</i>	I. Horvath
2D	<i>Personality type – Gender, Psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/adherence</i>	L. Bjermer, F. Kanniess
2E	<i>Virus / Allergens</i>	Z. Diamant, S. Johnston, R. Djukanovic
2F	<i>Environmental air pollution indoor/outdoor pollution &amp; occupational factors</i>	G. Brusselle, A. Papi
2G	<i>Drugs &amp; irritants / Overdose of <math>\beta_2</math>-agonists</i>	P. Chanez
2H	<i>Interaction between different trigger factors</i>	N. Papadopoulos
<b>3</b>	<b>Acute Management</b>	E. Zervas (leader)
<b>4</b>	<b>Prevention</b>	C. Brightling (leader), Dermot Ryan, Richard Russell and Sarah Diver
<b>5</b>	<b>ELF Patient perspective</b>	D. Hamerlijnc, ELP Patient Advisory Group
	<b>ERS senior methodologist</b>	T. Tonia
	<b>Literature Search</b>	K. Samitas

## Summary

Despite the use of effective medications to control asthma, severe exacerbations in asthma are still a major health risk and require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome such as hospitalization or death. Moreover, severe exacerbations are associated with substantial huge healthcare costs, and psychological burden including anxiety and fear for patients and their families. The European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS) set up a Task Force (TF) to search for a clear definition of severe exacerbations and to also define research questions and priorities. The statement includes comments from patients who were members of the TF.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Asthma is one of the most common chronic diseases and its worldwide prevalence has risen around 3-fold in recent decades [1]. With the recognition of the inflammatory nature of the disease and the introduction of inhaled corticosteroids, asthma control and the quality of life of asthma patients have substantially improved and many deaths have been prevented. Nevertheless, patients still face exacerbations of varying severity ranging from increased symptoms to life-threatening episodes. And any asthmatic patient may suffer severe exacerbation and even die from one. In fact, most exacerbations present in mild asthmatics, who are the majority of asthma sufferers [2, 3]. The causes leading to exacerbations may be exposure to a triggering agent, lack of or adherence to treatment, the inherent severity and hyperresponsiveness of the disease and may be affected by comorbidities. Severe exacerbations of asthma likely carry most of the burden of the disease through their immediate and delayed-associated risks. Severe exacerbations are exposing patients to immediate and delayed side effects of high doses of bronchodilators and systemic corticosteroids, and quite often to antibiotics. Absenteeism, presenteeism, care-associated risks if admitted (nosocomial infection for example), anxiety and many other issues are insufficiently describing the burden of severe exacerbations. Epidemiological data remain heterogenous as very different definitions are used in cohorts and in clinical trials. For example, in TENOR II, 25.8% of the population reported a severe exacerbation [4]. In the MENSA study, among enrolled patients who reported  $3.5 \pm 2.2$  exacerbations before entering the study, 17 to 21% were admitted. During the trial, the mean rate of clinically significant exacerbation and exacerbation requiring admission fell to 1.74 and 0.10 respectively [5]. Unfortunately, asthma deaths still exist. Their rates are low and most of them are seen as preventable [6, 7] in westernized countries. This also implies that

1  
2  
3 some are not preventable, suggesting a place for new drugs to treat refractory episodes of near  
4  
5 fatal asthma.

6  
7 Accordingly, both the ERS and the EAACI elicited a task force in 2016 that aims to review the  
8  
9 most relevant research evidence and the current practice on definition, clinical identification of  
10  
11 severe exacerbations, triggers and risk factors, management and prevention. Subsequently, this  
12  
13 document does not contain recommendations for clinical practice but offers recommendations  
14  
15 for future research.  
16  
17

## 18 19 20 **Methodology**

21  
22 After the initial meetings the Task Force members decided to address four main research  
23  
24 questions related to serious exacerbations: 1) what are the available definitions for severe  
25  
26 exacerbations in asthmatics and what would be an accurate definition, 2) which are the trigger  
27  
28 factors related to the initiation and severity of exacerbations, 3) what is the best way to manage  
29  
30 severe exacerbations 4) and finally what is the best strategy to prevent them. Specific keywords  
31  
32 and MeSH-terms were identified based on several key-references provided by the Task Force  
33  
34 members, and the corresponding literature search was initiated for all sections using the  
35  
36 MEDLINE and CENTRAL (Cochrane Library) Databases. Search results were extracted in .txt  
37  
38 file formats and imported in a specially designed reference management software (Reference  
39  
40 Manager Version 12) in order to screen for duplicates. Further processing of the search results  
41  
42 was made in a step-wise approach (as shown in the supplementary file flow-charts) based on  
43  
44 the title, the abstract, and finally after reading the whole text, filtering for date (2000 and  
45  
46 onwards), age (adults only), language (only English), and type (included: randomized and  
47  
48 observational studies and systematic reviews/meta-analyses, excluded: case reports and letters  
49  
50 to the editor). All articles remaining after final processing for each section were sent back to  
51  
52 the corresponding TF members for final evaluation (corresponding flow charts are available as  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 a supplementary file). From this sorting of the relevant literature, leaders of the four sections  
4  
5 drafted a first version and each statement was kept or removed if any concern was expressed  
6  
7 and no consensus could be found. During the subsequent dedicated meetings, research needs  
8  
9 were identified and tables and figures were reviewed.  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## 2. Definition of severe exacerbations of asthma

Asthma severity and control have more or less been defined and graded over the years so that the definitions are equally understood by all stakeholders [3, 8–10]. This is not yet the case for asthma exacerbations where exacerbations are defined as episodes characterized by more or less rapid increase in symptoms, sufficient to require a change in treatment [3, 11]. Severe exacerbations are usually defined based on use of systemic, usually oral corticosteroids (OCS), emergency care visits and/or hospitalizations [1], while in some clinical studies reductions in lung function (peak expiratory flow [PEF] or forced expiratory volume in one second [FEV1]) of more than 20 or 30% have also been included in the definition. (Table 1) It must be noted that patient perception and easy access to rescue corticosteroids and emergency care facilities may confound the definition and so may the retrospective collection of data. The ERS/ATS statement on exacerbations released in 2009 [12] defines severe exacerbations as events that require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome, i.e. hospitalization or death. However, there is subjectivity in the perception of severity and moreover, many studies have shown that the risk of severe exacerbation is associated with a multitude of factors. These factors include (1) the level of asthma control, (2) asthma severity based on ERS/ATS definition [3], (3) lung function, (4) the presence of comorbidities, (5) the psychosocial status (to assess the ability to seek help in case of clinical worsening), (6) previous history of near fatal attacks and (7) response to treatment. Such factors seem important to guide treatment decisions and, importantly, decisions regarding hospitalizations. Moreover, prediction models assessing future risk of exacerbations in adult asthma patients have been proposed, such as the one published by Miller et al, based on the TENOR cohort [13]. However, the applicability of such models has not been examined in large studies and needs to be assessed prospectively. Composite scores have been developed for use in other acute

1  
2  
3 respiratory conditions, for example the CURB-65 or PSI score for pneumonia or GENEVA  
4 score for pulmonary embolism, and they greatly help clinicians in treatment decisions and  
5 are important for the safety of the patients. All TF members in their practice consider severe  
6 exacerbations of asthma as a significant worsening of the disease that require OCS  
7 treatment for at least 5 days. In the ERS/ATS task force in 2009, a three-day course of  
8 OCS was the recommended definition for clinical trials. This small difference was  
9 supported by all TF members as it may differentiate from patients with episodes of loss of  
10 control requiring short courses (e.g. 1-2 days) of OCS and from temporary increase of  
11 maintenance treatment to improve the control of their disease. These patients may have an  
12 accumulated use of OCS over time equivalent to someone with repeated exacerbations but  
13 will not be reported as such. Whether 3 or 5 days of OCS is more accurate for discriminating  
14 a mild from a severe exacerbation will probably not be addressable in terms of evidence.

15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29 1) Herein we report an expert-based opinion that definitely not intends to change the  
30 definition used in trials in order to keep them comparable and 2) as the harmfulness of  
31 cumulative doses of corticosteroids is obvious above 0.5 g per year [14], a five-days based  
32 definition would make better fit this OCS-associated risk with the threshold of two  
33 exacerbations. Although variable among countries and systems, emergency visit or  
34 hospitalization, the TF members base hospitalization or initiation of treatment with OCS  
35 on the GINA or BTS recommendations to improve standardization. It seems that it would  
36 be important to develop, test and use a composite score that takes into consideration the  
37 patient's previous health status, the presence of comorbidities, history of severe or near  
38 fatal exacerbations, adherence to treatment, psychosocial status, level of control and of  
39 course, response to treatment-the latter is already factored into asthma exacerbation  
40 management guidelines- rather than just clinical severity at presentation and PEF or  
41 spirometry values.

42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55 TABLE 1: Examples of definitions of severe exacerbation in asthma patients used in the  
56 literature.  
57  
58  
59  
60



Author	Definition of severe exacerbation	Comment
GINA 2019 [1]	Exacerbations of asthma are episodes characterized by a progressive increase in symptoms of shortness of breath, cough, wheezing or chest tightness and progressive decrease in lung function, i.e. they represent a change from the patient's usual status that is sufficient to require a change in treatment. Definition based on symptoms ("talks in words, sits hunched forward, agitated"), clinical findings (RR>30/min, BPM>120/min, SAT<90%, use of accessory muscles) and lung function (PEF< 50% pref.)	GINA proposes an accurate definition of exacerbations of asthma. Regarding severe exacerbations, GINA does not define exact criteria by which to distinguish severity levels
Reddel et al (ERS/ATS 2009) [12]	Severe asthma exacerbations are defined as events that require urgent action on the part of the patient and physician to prevent a serious outcome, such as hospitalization or death from asthma. The definition should include at least 1 of the following: a. Use of systemic corticosteroids or an increase from a stable maintenance dose, for at least 3 days. b. A hospitalization or emergency department (ED) visit because of asthma, requiring systemic corticosteroids	Strength: This is the most commonly used definition Weakness: it relies on patient and doctor subjective assessment, there are no hard criteria for deterioration
Custovic et al (EAACI 2013)[9]	No specific definition provided	Strength: The taskforce stresses the need for a consensus definition of asthma exacerbation that could usefully guide treatment. Weakness: It is not really a definition
O'Byrne et al 2009 [15]	Defined as events requiring hospitalization or emergency treatment due to worsening of asthma, or death due to asthma.	Strengths and weaknesses same as those of Ref [12] (ERS/ATS 2009)

	Emergency treatment was defined as treatment of acute airway obstruction with systemic corticosteroids and nebulized or parenteral bronchodilators given at a healthcare institution.	
Green et al [16], Pauwels et al (FACET study) [17]	Decrease in morning PEF >30% on 2 or more consecutive days, or deterioration in symptoms needing OCS	Strengths: Adds an objective limit in addition to the need for OCS or the vague “deterioration” Weakness: 30% decrease is not universally severe, no reference to length of time
Jayaram et al 2006 [18]	Course of OCS as determined by study investigator	Weakness: No objective criteria given (‘determined by study investigator’)
Demoly P 2004 [19]	Hospitalization was unanimously recognized as the first criterion for severe exacerbations. A decrease in peak expiratory flow of more than 30% below the baseline value on two consecutive days and an episode requiring systemic corticosteroids were the next criteria. This survey emphasizes the complexity of the notions of asthma control and exacerbation	Strengths: This survey emphasizes the complexity of the notions of asthma control and exacerbation and reflects real life practice. Uses an objective measure and length of time Weakness: No hard criteria
Fuhlbrigge 2013 (NIH workshop) [20]	An exacerbation is a worsening of asthma requiring the use of systemic corticosteroids (or for patients on a stable maintenance dose, an increase in the use of systemic corticosteroids) to prevent a serious outcome (The subcommittee does not endorse severity stratification in the core outcome definition)	Strengths and weaknesses same as ref [12]. Addition: increase in use of systemic steroid dose in patients already on steroids
Castro et al 2010 [21]	Those requiring systemic corticosteroids or doubling of ICS dose	Weakness: No criteria given for ‘requiring’; ‘doubling of ICS dose’
Murphy et al 2010 [22]	Defined as episodes requiring medical intervention [hospital admission, emergency department	Strengths and weaknesses same as ref [12].

	presentation, unscheduled doctor visit or the use of oral corticosteroids (OCS)]	
--	--	--

### 3. TRIGGERS AND RISK FACTORS

#### 3A. Assessment of risk: what is cause and what is effect?

The prevention of exacerbations is probably the most important aim for patients with asthma and health care professionals. In order to achieve this aim, it is important to plan the re-assessment of asthma patients and treatment adjustments because of the immediate risks (i.e. acute respiratory failure, death) and future risks (recurrence of exacerbations, decline in lung function, and side effects of treatments) [1]. Routine management strategies assess asthma control based on clinical symptoms, history of exacerbations and pulmonary function testing. In addition, in experienced centers, strategies guided by airway hyperresponsiveness (BHR) or sputum eosinophilia may provide benefit for preventing future exacerbations [16, 23]. In contrast, the use of fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FENO) as a surrogate marker in asthma management is still inconclusive [24–26] except during pregnancy [27]. A recent meta-analysis found more supportive results deserving further evaluations [28].

Since a previous exacerbation has been shown to be an important risk factor for future exacerbations (even though this concept has been challenged) [29], the “frequent exacerbator” likely represents an important clinical phenotype; and asthma treatment should aim to modify what might look like an irreversible cycle [30]. For this purpose, multiple initiatives have investigated and weighed the importance of individual traits in predicting recurrent exacerbations. Many other characteristics and conditions have also been reported such as amount of asthma medication, comorbidities including obesity, occupational stress [31], sensitization, indoor and outdoor pollution, small airway dysfunction [32], loss of lung elastic

1  
2  
3 recoil [33], and psychological factors [29, 34–44]. Retrospective studies have shown that  
4  
5 repeated assessment of composite scores of control such as the Asthma Control Test (ACT) or  
6  
7 Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ) and other tools, such as eHealth and mHealth[45], may  
8  
9 predict severe exacerbations [46]. However, whether self-monitoring of asthma control score  
10  
11 questionnaires at home can be useful to predict (and consequently, help to prevent)  
12  
13 exacerbations in a real life setting needs to be further investigated [47–49]. An index of  
14  
15 fluctuation of Peak Expiratory Flow (PEF) measurements at home was able to predict  
16  
17 exacerbations [50]. Lastly, although a hospital admission provides proof of a severe  
18  
19 exacerbation (see definition), the decision to hospitalize a patient with asthma also depends on  
20  
21 the clinical course during management at the emergency department [2, 51, 52], and on  
22  
23 additional factors such as age, inflammatory phenotype, presence of comorbidities [53, 54], and  
24  
25 familial and social conditions [2, 51, 52].  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

### 31 **3B. Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors and mathematical models**

32  
33 Until recently, modifiable risk factors for exacerbations were mostly seen as behavioral issues  
34  
35 or environmental triggers [55–58]. This included patients' beliefs (or parents' beliefs in the  
36  
37 case of children) and expectations, poor inhalation technique and/or treatment adherence,  
38  
39 (active or passive) smoking and allergen exposure (such as in-house pets, for example). More  
40  
41 recently, the key role of viruses has been acknowledged, and viral triggers are now perceived  
42  
43 as potentially modifiable factors. However, no therapeutic strategies have yet been able to  
44  
45 successfully interfere with rhinovirus carriage and bouts of infections in children and adults;  
46  
47 this is an important area of ongoing research. Accordingly, viral infection and impaired host  
48  
49 responses to rhinovirus can be modelled to predict the potential of new antiviral drugs [53, 59–  
50  
51 61]. The synergistic action of allergen exposure (e.g. seasonal pollens, house dust mite) and  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 viruses may indicate a place for combining strategies targeting each factor alone or in  
4  
5 association [38, 55, 62].  
6  
7

8  
9 High blood eosinophil count, reflecting type 2 (T2) inflammation, is well-recognized as a  
10  
11 significant risk factor for asthma exacerbations [63], with a consistent dose-ranging effect  
12  
13 reproduced in different large scale studies [64, 65]. The relative weight of elevated blood  
14  
15 eosinophilia with any other predictor of future exacerbation is largely unknown, but is  
16  
17 influenced by the level of asthma control, asthma severity, asthma phenotype (e.g. age at onset  
18  
19 of asthma), lung function and history of exacerbations. Validated biomarkers reflecting non-  
20  
21 T2 asthma phenotype(s) remain an urgent unmet need [66]. The recognition of T2-related traits  
22  
23 makes a patient with uncontrolled severe asthma eligible for biologic therapies targeting key  
24  
25 T2 disease-drivers, such as eosinophils, IL-4, IL-13 and/or IgE [67]. Elevated blood eosinophil  
26  
27 count is associated with an increased exacerbation risk and to date this is the most relevant  
28  
29 phenotyping marker. The reduction in exacerbation rates provided by anti IgE-, -TSLP, -IL-5-  
30  
31 and -IL-4/IL-13 antibody therapy supports the concept that T2-associated asthma is associated  
32  
33 with an increased risk of exacerbations [68, 69], even though it is not the only one.  
34  
35  
36

37 Asthma patients may follow many different trajectories [56]. These trajectories can be  
38  
39 described under three main categories and sustain the concept of asthma severity (persistently  
40  
41 severe, intermittently severe, never severe). Presently, exacerbations represent one of the key  
42  
43 outcomes in asthma with the greatest asthma-related risks as defined by GINA [1] and hence,  
44  
45 the development of innovative drugs and effective treatment modalities remains a priority.  
46  
47 Exacerbations are episodes of acute respiratory distress; a situation that causes major stress for  
48  
49 the patient themselves, their relatives and even for the health care providers. They represent an  
50  
51 important economic burden both in terms of health care use and professional absenteeism. They  
52  
53 are also associated with long term risks (relapses, side effects of treatments dominated by  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

systemic steroids, lung function decline) [1, 9, 70]. Some single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and other gene modifiers summarized in **Figure 1** could be associated with such long term risks [62, 71–82]. It appears worthwhile exploring the epigenetic modifications in well-characterized asthma populations, particularly in late onset disease.

## Severe asthma trajectories

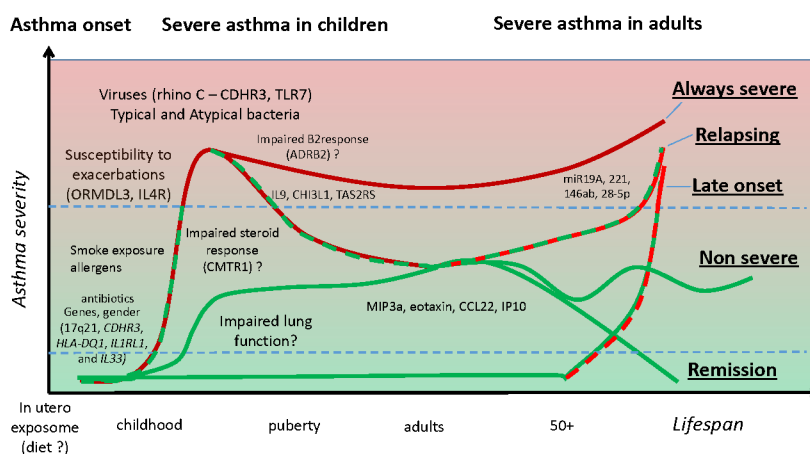


Figure 1 Potential severe asthma trajectories and the importance of risk factors and genetic variants (such as single nucleotide polymorphisms [SNPs]). this figure presents a summary of the literature and is not intended to be exhaustive

### 3C. Risk factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes.

Since severity of asthma is presently defined by treatment requirement, which partly relies on previous exacerbation rates [3], the frequency of exacerbations is associated with severity.

However, exacerbations are not restricted to patients with the severe form of asthma.

Near-fatal asthma episodes can occur in patients even with so called “mild asthma”, implicating that “mild asthma (GINA step 1 and 2) “does not necessarily mean “low risk asthma”. Most of the time, these patients are not receiving any anti-inflammatory treatment at the time of the event and their asthma can be well-controlled when it is correctly managed and treated [2, 35].

1  
2  
3 Near-fatal episodes represent a minority of exacerbations seen in the emergency department  
4 [2]. Interestingly, a hyperbolic curve relating inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) prescription refilling  
5 and asthma mortality is highly suggestive of a strong death-preventing effect of ICS use [83].  
6  
7 Actually, asthma deaths due to exacerbations have decreased over time in westernized  
8 countries. However, their incidence was still estimated to be more than 900 in the UK in the  
9 latest National Review of Asthma Deaths, and at least half of these dramatic cases were  
10 considered preventable [6, 84].

11  
12 Risk factors and clinical characteristics could be identified and robustly confirmed in different  
13 countries. These criteria should be known to all health care providers involved in the  
14 management of asthma and are shown in **Table 2**.

15  
16 Better characterization of disease mechanisms is required in those patients with an incomplete  
17 response to ICS (across GINA steps) [70]. Defining clinical phenotypes and mechanistic  
18 endotypes is a useful concept which has been developed to better manage these patients [85].  
19  
20 In the SARP-3 cohorts, five factors were positively associated with exacerbation frequency:  
21 chronic sinusitis, gastro-esophageal reflux, blood eosinophils, body mass index, and  
22 bronchodilator responsiveness. Clusters in primary care identified early onset and obesity as  
23 risk factors for exacerbations. A cluster of obese female asthmatics with recurrent  
24 exacerbations has been described in both SARP and UBIOPRED cohorts [86, 87]. Furthermore,  
25 a large scale study on children confirmed that obesity is linked with a shorter period of time  
26 between exacerbations [88]. Symptoms such as cough and wheeze are correlated with  
27 uncontrolled asthma, but are poorly associated with exacerbations [89]. Interestingly, new  
28 inflammatory patterns of exacerbations are currently described with the integration of the  
29 microbiome and T1-related cytokines [90]. A gene signature derived from sputum gene  
30 transcriptomics containing Charcot-Leyden crystal galectin [CLC]; carboxypeptidase 3  
31 [CPA3]; deoxyribonuclease 1-like 3 [DNASE1L3]; alkaline phosphatase, liver/bone/kidney  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 [ALPL]; CXCR2; and IL1 $\beta$  (a mixture of eosinophil and mast cell product with neutrophil-  
4 associated cytokines) can predict future exacerbation phenotypes of asthma, with the greatest  
5 biomarker performance compared to fractional exhaled nitric oxide values and sputum  
6 eosinophil counts in identifying those who would experience frequent severe exacerbations  
7 [91].  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12

13 It should be kept in mind that very high blood eosinophil counts (e.g. more than a thousand  
14 per mm<sup>3</sup>) are sometimes associated with other conditions such as eosinophilic granulomatous  
15 with polyangiitis (EGPA) or allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA) which overlap  
16 with severe asthma. These specific conditions are prone to very frequent exacerbations. They  
17 are sometimes difficult to discriminate from severe asthma when all the diagnostic criteria are  
18 not fulfilled [92].  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



Table 2. Risk factors for various outcomes in asthma exacerbations

	Likely	Possible	Ref
RF for dying	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• B2 agonist overuse</li> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Age</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• Gender</li> <li>• Drug and venom allergy</li> <li>• Allergen exposure (including thunderstorm asthma)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intubation outside PICU</li> <li>• High number of ED visit</li> <li>• Sports</li> <li>• Alternaria and penicillium spores</li> <li>• Nitrogen dioxide, ozone</li> <li>• Severe asthma</li> </ul>	[35, 93–97]
RF for ICU admission – near fatal asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Severe asthma</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• Loss of elastic recoil</li> <li>• Permanent airflow limitation</li> <li>• Hyperinflation</li> <li>• Menstruation</li> <li>• Steroid dependence</li> <li>• History of intubation</li> <li>• Delayed systemic corticosteroid use</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heroin, cocaine</li> </ul>	[33, 39, 41, 98, 99]
RF for severe exacerbation – ED – admission	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Comorbidities</li> <li>• Psychological issues</li> <li>• Age</li> <li>• Absence of ICS</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> </ul>		
RF for frequent severe exacerbations ( $\geq 2 - 3$ OCS bursts/y)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No ICS treatment</li> <li>• Virus infection</li> <li>• High blood eosinophil count</li> <li>• Smoking</li> <li>• Genetic</li> <li>• Atopy</li> <li>• BMI</li> <li>• BD responsiveness</li> <li>• Chronic sinusitis</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low socioeconomic status</li> <li>• GERD</li> <li>• Aspirin sensitive</li> <li>• Climate- Thunderstorms during pollen season</li> </ul>	[54, 100, 101]

RF = risk factor; BD = bronchodilator; BMI = body mass index; ED= emergency department; ICS = inhaled corticosteroids; ICU= intensive care unit; GERD = gastro-esophageal reflux disease; NFA= near-fatal asthma attack; OCS = oral corticosteroids

### 3D. Typology– gender, psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/Adherence

Poor treatment adherence is a major trigger for loss of control at the population level, and this is a common finding also for onset of exacerbations [102]. Although ICS treatment is able to decrease the exacerbation rate at all dose ranges [103], it seems that an adherence of at least 75% of the prescribed dose (hazard ratio [HR] 0.61; 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.41–0.90) is required to achieve this goal [103]. Of note, 24% of exacerbations can be attributed to poor adherence, which is often unintentional due to poor inhalation technique. Moreover, running out of inhaler was frequently reported in ED-attending asthmatics [104]. The use of multiple devices, especially when different principles are mixed, such as dry powder inhalers and metered dose inhalers (MDI), is also a risk [105]. Non-consented switching of inhalers has also been shown to be a significant risk factor for exacerbation; these apparent cost-sparing measures in the short-term are thus subsequently countered by increased health care utilization [106]. Alexithymia [107], specific personality traits [108], and poor perception of symptoms may lead to a delayed request for help [95–100]. Female gender [109, 110], ethnicity [111, 112] and patient beliefs [113] could also be identified as risk factors for exacerbation. The prevalence of psychological dysfunction, including anxiety and depression, is increased in patients with asthma and has been shown to be related to severity of the disease [114]. Anxiety and depression are also strong predictors for poor asthma control [115].

Poor adherence is well documented for ICS; but new injectable biologics also appear susceptible to this, particularly when self-administered [116]. On the other hand, self-administration is likely to improve access to treatment and to reduce the burden of the disease [117].

Several drawbacks could be raised against therapeutic educational programs, but at present many simple and efficient solutions extensively reviewed elsewhere can work [70, 102]. The benefits of written or web-based action plans are worth investigations [118]. Furthermore,

1  
2  
3 e-Health solutions such as electronic reminder messages and, more recently, connected (to a  
4 computer or a smartphone) inhaler devices can be implemented and have been shown to be  
5 effective [119, 120], but as they are usually only geared towards the use of one single inhaler  
6 per patient and no other medication it is likely of limited value for patients requiring multiple  
7 medications. However, these interventions should be prospectively evaluated for their ability  
8 to decrease exacerbation rates over time and whether they are really easing patients' lives.  
9 Stronger partnerships between patients and health care professionals are likely to improve  
10 adherence and new self-adherence programs should be developed and tested for their effect on  
11 preventing (severe) exacerbations.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21

22 Although there is no perfect tool for associating a severe asthma exacerbation with poor  
23 adherence, a minimal adherence checklist is proposed in GINA and the task force decided to  
24 echo it presently (**Table 3**). Dose-counter displaying devices are preferred options according  
25 to a European Lung Foundation (ELF) open discussion organized for the present task force.  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	Factors contributing to poor adherence
6	<i>Medication/Regimen factors</i>
7	- Difficulties using inhaler device
8	- Burdensome regimen (e.g. multiple times per day)
9	- Multiple different inhalers
10	<i>Unintentional poor adherence</i>
11	- Misunderstanding about instructions
12	- Forgetfulness
13	- Absence of a daily routine
14	- Cost
15	<i>Intentional poor adherence</i>
16	- Perception that treatment is not necessary
17	- Denial or anger about asthma or its treatment
18	- Inappropriate expectations
19	- Concerns about side-effects (real or perceived)
20	- Dissatisfaction with health care providers
21	- Stigmatization
22	- Cultural or religious issues
23	- Cost
24	How to identify poor adherence in clinical practice
25	<i>Ask an empathic question</i>
26	- Acknowledge the likelihood of incomplete adherence and encourage an open non-judgmental discussion
27	<i>Check medication usage</i>
28	- Check the date of the last controller prescription
29	- Check the date and dose counter on the inhaler
30	- In some health systems, prescribing and dispensing frequency can be monitored electronically by clinicians and/or pharmacists
31	Examples of successful adherence interventions
32	- Shared decision-making for medication/dose choice
33	- Inhaler reminders for missed doses
34	- Prescribing ICS once-daily versus twice-daily
35	- Home visits for a comprehensive asthma program by an asthma nurse

Table 3. Factors affecting adherence in clinical practice, according to GINA [1].

36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

### 3E. Virus/allergens

A synergy exists between respiratory viral infections and allergen exposure inducing asthma and causing exacerbations in susceptible, sensitized asthmatics [38, 55, 62]. Additionally, interaction between lower respiratory tract viral infections (LRTI) and atopic sensitization has been recognized as a major risk factor contributing to asthma development and exacerbations [62, 121]. Birth cohort studies provide strong evidence for a synergistic effect of viral LRTIs and atopic sensitization on risk of asthma inception, particularly in predisposed children [122, 123]. Several studies in both sensitized children [55, 124] and adults [16, 38] found a strong association between the levels of specific IgE to inhaled allergens and viral LRTIs in increasing the risk of severe asthma exacerbations requiring hospital admission.

The synergism between allergen sensitization and viral LRTIs has been indirectly confirmed in a study in asthmatic children, showing that pretreatment with omalizumab decreases asthma exacerbations in fall, which are likely (rhino-)virus-induced [125]. Recent evidence demonstrates that omalizumab restores deficient anti-viral immunity in children with asthma, and that exacerbation reduction with omalizumab was greatest in those with greatest restoration of anti-viral immunity [125]. Rhinoviruses (RV), especially RV-A and RV-C groups, are the most frequent viruses detected during an asthma exacerbation including severe asthma exacerbations with near-fatal and fatal asthma, and allergic asthmatics usually experience more severe and prolonged LRTI symptoms with RV infection compared to non-atopic healthy controls [38, 55, 126]. Interestingly, CDHR3 polymorphism is a risk factor for RV induced severe asthma exacerbations in children [71], possibly because it has recently been shown to be an RV-C receptor [127]. Another study showed that documenting a viral infection in the ED was a strong predictor for ED re-attendance in children [128]. Impaired interferon responses to RV infection are associated with asthma in both adults and children [105, 106], and are

1  
2  
3 associated with increased RV-induced asthma exacerbation severity [131] Although appealing,  
4 the development of a RV vaccine appears highly challenging [132] However, a proof of concept  
5 study on inhaled IFN- $\beta$  as a therapeutic intervention in virus-induced asthma exacerbations  
6 only showed benefit in a subgroup of people with moderate/severe asthma [133], implicating  
7 that further research is needed to investigate the concept of interferon supplementation in  
8 asthmatics at exacerbation onset.  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

### 18 **3F. Environmental factors: indoor/outdoor air pollution & occupational factors**

19  
20 Outdoor air pollution is an established risk factor for asthma exacerbations, although the  
21 magnitude of effect remains difficult to assess precisely [101]. Diesel exhaust particles and  
22 peaks of ambient air pollution, (reflected by, amongst others, high levels of nitrogen dioxide  
23 and ozone) were shown as concomitant factors to emergency department attendance in  
24 asthmatics but also could be epidemiologically related to asthma exacerbations and deaths [97].  
25  
26 Work-related exacerbations are probably underestimated whereas many different non-specific  
27 irritants could be identified such as mineral dusts, gas and fumes etc. [134].  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

35 Indoor air pollution comprises second-hand tobacco smoke exposure, which is of special  
36 interest in children, but also other less well-known contributors such as volatile organic  
37 compounds (VOC) [135]. Open fire place, sick building syndrome, cleaning supplies and  
38 household products, and inadequate ventilation are also to be integrated into potential sources  
39 of indoor air pollution. We propose to test whether facilitating access to air quality data records  
40 may prevent asthma exacerbations. The European Lung Foundation (ELF), while reviewing  
41 the present manuscript, supports the use of portable air quality sensors, but more research is  
42 needed to know what and how to measure the right substances.  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51

52 Occupational sensitizers and triggers have been cause for concern for many years and efforts  
53 have been taken to limit their impact. All TF members in their practice consider it worthwhile  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 facilitating access to free and independent experts in occupational medicine, as well as using  
4 FENO, spirometry, and potentially other relevant diagnostic tests (e.g. induced sputum) at  
5 work, especially considering their relatively low direct and indirect costs. More research is  
6 needed on occupational triggers and their effect on severe asthma exacerbations. Patients also  
7 raised the need to support asthma patients when choosing careers to avoid known and  
8 dangerous sensitizers and triggers.  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

### 18 **3G. Drugs & irritants / Excessive use of $\beta_2$ -agonists**

19  
20 Whether drugs known to affect airway smooth muscle tone (such as  $\beta$ -blockers) are able to  
21 trigger an asthma exacerbation is unclear. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) and  
22 aspirin intake in susceptible patients induces asthma exacerbations, and low dose induction of  
23 tolerance must be investigated to assess their benefit in preventing exacerbations.  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

29 Excessive use of short-acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists (SABA) in the absence of ICS use has long been  
30 linked to hospitalizations and asthma deaths, best exemplified by asthma deaths epidemics  
31 related to high doses of fenoterol reported in New Zealand and other countries [136]. Also  
32 regular use of long-acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists (LABA) in the absence of ICS has been shown to  
33 increase significantly the risk of asthma exacerbations and asthma deaths potentially through a  
34 “masking” effect [137–139]. Not only overuse, but also regular use of SABA – without ICS  
35 [140] – has also been associated with paradoxical asthma worsening [52, 141]. Mechanisms  
36 involved are not fully understood, but may relate to induction of inflammatory mediators in  
37 bronchial epithelial cells by  $\beta_2$ -agonists (both SABA and LABA), when administered in the  
38 absence of ICS [142], and/or by a tachyphylaxis phenomenon but this is still to be demonstrated  
39 in vivo [143]. Because several short and long acting  $\beta_2$ -agonists are now available, their  
40 potential side effects should be assessed in detail and reported, especially as paradoxical  
41 triggers for loss of control and exacerbations. The TF members limit these issues by systematic  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 concomitant ICS use and reassess the patients repeatedly. Most TF members avoid frequent  
4  
5 and inappropriate use of repeated or regular high doses of SABA irrespective of the manner of  
6  
7 administration (inhaled: pMDI, DPI, or nebulisation) without medical supervision.  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



## 4. ACUTE MANAGEMENT

### TREATMENT OF SEVERE ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS

Despite optimum maintenance therapy and appropriate prevention strategies, severe exacerbations occur, even in patients with mild disease or well-controlled asthma [1, 144].

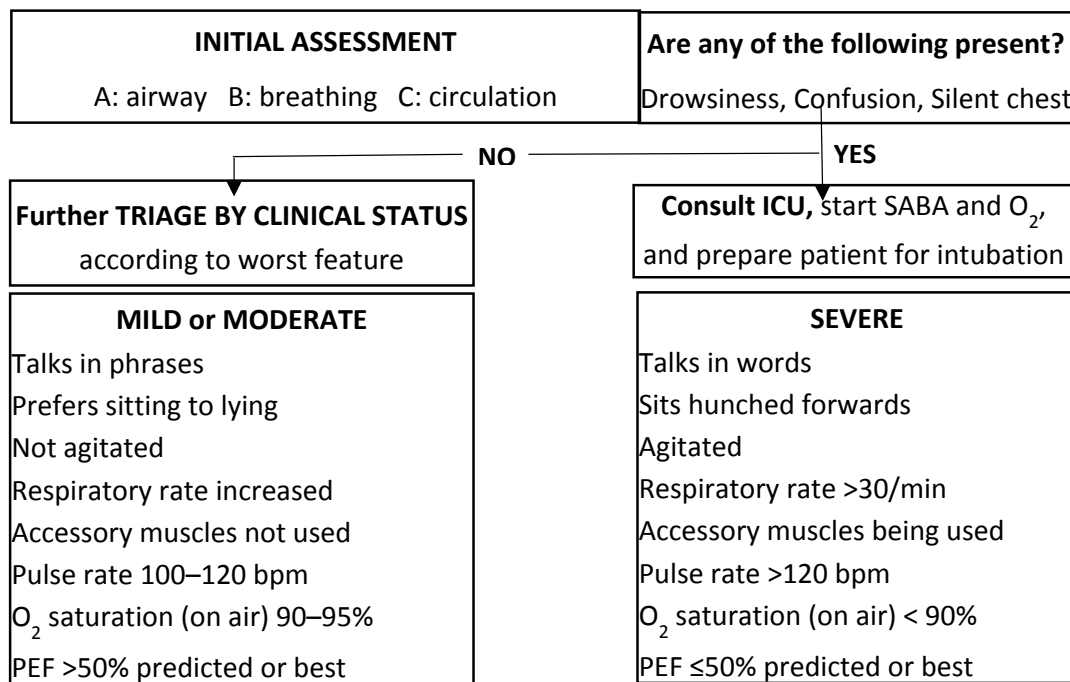
Therefore, proper assessment and adequate intervention are crucial to stabilize asthma and alleviate symptoms. Although in recent years there has been ample research into the treatment of stable asthma and several new drugs and formulations have been marketed, so far a limited number of treatments are available for asthma exacerbations while limited evidence exists in support of their use [145].

For patients presenting with acute asthma to primary care or emergency department (ED), the TF members consider that a proper assessment of exacerbation severity is determined based on history, physical examination and objective measurements of lung function and oxygen saturation [146] (**Figure 2**). Arterial blood gas measurements and chest X-ray are not included in the guidelines dedicated to the initial assessment, nevertheless they are performed by all the TF members for patients with severe exacerbations and for those who do not respond to initial treatment or are deteriorating [147–149].

Information from patients' history can identify those who are at increased risk of worst outcome and asthma-related death and prompt arrangements to be made for more frequent evaluation and aggressive treatment (**Table 2**).

Treatment is usually started immediately and simultaneously with the initial evaluation of the patient. The following treatments are usually administered concurrently to achieve the most rapid resolution of the exacerbation and prevent patient deterioration.

Figure 2: Assessment of exacerbation severity based physical signs and objective measurements (adapted from GINA [1])



## Oxygen

Oxygen is usually delivered by nasal cannula or Venturi mask in order to achieve arterial oxygen saturation of 93–98%. In severe exacerbations, high concentration oxygen increases the risk of hypercapnia while controlled low flow oxygen therapy is associated with better outcomes [150–152].

## Short-acting $\beta_2$ -agonists (SABA)

SABAs intend to resolve bronchospasm and to relieve acute symptoms of asthma, and are usually initially administered every 15 to 20 minutes for the first hour during an acute asthma exacerbation. Comparison of pMDI-spacer and nebulizer has shown increased efficiency of SABA delivery via pMDI-spacer and equivalent clinical outcomes [153, 154]. Data are conflicting whether continuous nebulization with a SABA is superior to intermittent

1  
2  
3 nebulization [155, 156]. In severe asthma exacerbations, continuous nebulization may be  
4  
5 preferred, based on evidence of reduced admissions and improved pulmonary function [155,  
6  
7 157]. There is no evidence to support the routine use of intravenous  $\beta_2$ -agonists in patients with  
8  
9 severe asthma exacerbations [158].  
10

### 11 12 13 14 Ipratropium bromide

15  
16 Adding ipratropium bromide to SABA decreases rates of hospitalizations and shortens ED  
17  
18 stays for patients with severe asthma exacerbations [159–161]. Some evidence shows that the  
19  
20 use of combination ipratropium/ $\beta$ -agonist therapy in acute asthmatic exacerbations provides  
21  
22 benefit without increased risk of adverse events [161].  
23  
24  
25

### 26 27 Corticosteroids

28  
29 Early administration of systemic corticosteroids for the treatment of asthma exacerbations is  
30  
31 considered a standard of care and is recommended worldwide to be given to the patient within  
32  
33 1 hour of presentation [162, 163]. A systematic review showed that the use of systemic  
34  
35 corticosteroids reduces the rate of hospital admission in ED settings, especially in patients with  
36  
37 severe asthma and those not currently receiving corticosteroids [164].  
38  
39

40 The optimal dose for systemic corticosteroids in asthma exacerbations remains to be  
41  
42 established. Doses above 2 mg/kg or 60-80 mg/day do not add benefit to improving lung  
43  
44 function, rates of hospital admission or length of hospital stay [162, 165]. Furthermore, no  
45  
46 differences are found between oral and intravenous administration of comparable  
47  
48 corticosteroid doses [166, 167]. Thus, daily doses of OCS equivalent to 50 mg prednisolone as  
49  
50 a single morning dose, or 200 mg hydrocortisone in divided doses, are adequate for most  
51  
52 patients [1]. A short course of 5 days OCS after ED treatment of acute asthma exacerbations  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 has been shown to reduce the rate of relapse [1, 164]. Courses longer than 5 days or a dose  
4 tapering did not provide additional benefit while increased side effects [168, 169].

5  
6  
7 The role of ICS in the management of asthma in the emergency department remain unclear and  
8 their use in severe asthma exacerbations is not evenly adopted [170].  
9  
10

#### 11 12 13 Other treatments

14  
15 None of the TF members use intravenous aminophylline and theophylline in the management  
16 of asthma exacerbations, in view of their poor efficacy and safety profile [1]. Intravenous  
17 magnesium sulphate (given as a single 2g infusion over 20 minutes) has been shown to reduce  
18 hospital admissions in severe exacerbations and in patients who fail to respond to initial  
19 treatment [171, 172]. Evidence does not support a role of antibiotics in asthma exacerbations  
20 unless there is strong presumption of lung infection [1, 173]. Other associated advices of  
21 management (hydration, physiotherapy, avoid exercise, etc.) are poorly evidenced [174].  
22  
23 Noteworthy, exercise outside an episode of exacerbation should be largely supported as it was  
24 shown to prevent exacerbations and to improve control [175].  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

## 5. PREVENTION

Here we describe the evidence for current therapies available across the severity spectrum of asthma, licensed biologics and those in phase 3 clinical development.

### Current small molecule asthma therapies

#### Corticosteroids

Extensive data support the role of inhaled corticosteroids in asthma with increasing dose reducing exacerbation frequency [1, 176, 177]. Increasing the ICS dose four-fold at the onset of exacerbation symptoms reduced the need for systemic corticosteroids by 19% [178]. No randomized controlled trials exist of prednisolone versus placebo as add-on therapy in severe asthma [179]. Registry data suggested that maintenance oral corticosteroid use was associated with reduced exacerbations among a cohort of severe asthmatics [180]. In a small study, high-dose intramuscular triamcinolone reduced hospital admissions and emergency department attendances; however, the long-term side effect profiles of systemic steroids have to be taken in mind. TF members use maintenance OCS as a therapeutic strategy for reducing exacerbations as a less preferred option and suggest this practice be supervised in expert referral centers familiar with the management and prevention of OCS side effects [181].

Presence of eosinophilic inflammation predicts a good response to corticosteroids in airways disease [182–184]. Tailoring corticosteroid dose to control sputum eosinophilia in asthma has achieved marked reductions in exacerbation rates [16, 18, 185] and the ERS/ATS guideline advocates measurement of eosinophilic inflammation in severe asthma [3].

Given the superiority of an on-demand ICS-containing regimen in two separate trials performed in patients with mild asthma in reducing the risk of exacerbation [186, 187], later confirmed in a real-life setting [188], the last GINA update promotes this strategy as early as

1  
2  
3 step 1, acknowledging the obvious inflammatory nature of the disease and in particular during  
4  
5 episodes of poor control that precedes exacerbation.

6  
7 The management of asthma using a sputum-guided adjustment of the daily dose of ICS was  
8  
9 shown efficient to prevent exacerbations in expert centers where induced sputum cytology can  
10  
11 be assessed routinely, in patients able to provide an adequate sample within the safety margins  
12  
13 of induction [16, 18].  
14  
15

16  
17  
18 Long Acting Beta-Agonists (LABA) added to ICS

19  
20 ICS-LABA combination therapy is standard in severe asthma and the addition of a LABA to  
21  
22 ICS reduces exacerbation frequency in asthma [1, 176, 177]. The TF echoed recurrent warnings  
23  
24 regarding monotherapy with LABA in asthma [189].  
25  
26  
27

28  
29 Long Acting Muscarinic Antagonists (LAMA) added to ICS

30  
31 Tiotropium, as add-on therapy for asthmatics uncontrolled while treated with ICS and LABA,  
32  
33 increased time to first exacerbation by 56 days versus placebo (P=0.03) [190]. A Cochrane  
34  
35 review of LAMA added to ICS vs ICS alone across all severities of asthma showed a reduction  
36  
37 in exacerbations requiring oral corticosteroids, and a trend towards reduction in hospital  
38  
39 admissions [191].  
40  
41  
42

43  
44 Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists (LTRA)

45  
46 A systematic review of LTRAs identified a significant reduction in exacerbations when used  
47  
48 as monotherapy compared to placebo, but no effect on exacerbation rates when used in patients  
49  
50 already taking inhaled corticosteroids [192]. Whether LTRAs reduce severe exacerbations in  
51  
52 severe asthmatics is unknown.  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

### Theophylline

A study comparing ICS/LABA and theophylline vs ICS/LABA and placebo found a significant reduction in severe exacerbations in the theophylline group in asthmatics who were treatment naïve [193]. Whether theophylline affects exacerbation frequency in severe asthma is unknown. Most TF members do not use theophylline as an add-on therapy for preventing exacerbations.

### Antimicrobials

In a large clinical trial thrice-weekly azithromycin in moderate-to-severe asthma resulted in a 41% reduction in severe exacerbations with benefits independent of inflammatory phenotype [194], in contrast to a previous sub-analysis in severe asthmatic patients where the benefits were limited to the non-eosinophilic subgroup [195]. Of note, worldwide, azithromycin is not approved to the best of knowledge in this indication. Anti-fungal agents in fungal-sensitized severe asthma not meeting criteria for allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis demonstrated no impact on severe exacerbations [196].

### Immunosuppressants

Data reporting exacerbations was limited in a Cochrane review examining the corticosteroid sparing effect of cyclosporin in severe oral corticosteroid dependent asthma [197]. A similar review examining the corticosteroid sparing effects of methotrexate in severe asthma did not demonstrate a beneficial effect on exacerbation rates [198].

### Allergen avoidance and immunotherapy

Allergen avoidance advice is standard clinical practice in severe asthma [1, 176, 177], but allergen avoidance has shown controversial benefit [199] possibly due to difficulty in achieving this effectively. Allergen immunotherapy (AIT) strategies in asthma report some benefit for

1  
2  
3 reducing symptoms and corticosteroid usage but have not been tested in severe asthma [200].

4  
5 It is unknown whether measures such as nocturnal temperature controlled laminar flow will be  
6  
7 effective. Reductions in airway inflammation are reported in atopic asthma [201] and studies in  
8  
9 severe asthma are ongoing [202].  
10

#### 11 12 13 Current biologics for asthma (Table 4)

14  
15 The phase 3 RCTs for currently available biological therapy in asthma, except for anti-IgE as  
16  
17 more established, are summarized in Table 4, including phase 2b studies that were considered  
18  
19 pivotal for registration. Studies in less severe asthma with a very low event rate, open-label  
20  
21 extensions that confirmed earlier findings and studies that did not report exacerbations were  
22  
23 not included.  
24  
25

#### 26 27 28 Anti-IgE: Omalizumab

29  
30 A Cochrane review of omalizumab as add-on therapy in moderate-to-severe asthma reported a  
31  
32 reduction (odds ratio (OR) 0.55, 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.42 to 0.60; ten studies, 3261  
33  
34 participants) in severe exacerbations [203], however subgroup analysis of severe asthma alone  
35  
36 did not demonstrate a clear benefit. Further clinical trials remain ongoing [201].  
37  
38  
39  
40

#### 41 42 Anti-IL5: Mepolizumab and Reslizumab

43  
44 Mepolizumab reduces exacerbation frequency by ~50% [5, 65, 204–206] and reduces the  
45  
46 requirement for maintenance oral corticosteroid [206]. Benefits were observed in severe  
47  
48 asthmatics with blood eosinophils >150cells/ $\mu$ L [207], with greatest exacerbation frequency  
49  
50 reductions seen with increasing eosinophilic inflammation. These beneficial effects were not  
51  
52 sustained over the 12 months following treatment withdrawal [208] while it was the case when  
53  
54 treatment was maintained [209]. This exacerbation rate reduction was also achieved while  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



1  
2  
3 tapering OCS in long term OCS users[210]. Reslizumab demonstrated a reduction in severe  
4 exacerbations in severe asthmatics with a baseline blood eosinophil count >400 cells/ $\mu$ L [211].  
5  
6 Improvements were greatest in those with GINA step 5 disease [212].  
7  
8  
9

#### 10 11 Anti-IL5R: Benralizumab

12  
13 Benralizumab reduces severe exacerbations [64, 213, 214] in those with a blood eosinophil count  
14 >300 cells/ $\mu$ L. A priori sub-analyses using an eosinophil cut off of 150 cells/ $\mu$ L also  
15 demonstrated significant reductions in exacerbation rates [215], although higher blood  
16 eosinophils and more frequent exacerbations predicted greater benefits [216]. This exacerbation  
17 rate reduction was also achieved while tapering OCS in long term OCS users [214]. A study of  
18 benralizumab administered in the setting of acute asthma exacerbation [66] reported a positive  
19 impact on recovery rates, however further work would be required to define the use of biologics  
20 in this setting.  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

#### 32 33 Bronchial Thermoplasty

34  
35 In 190 subjects who received bronchial thermoplasty (BT) versus 98 who underwent sham  
36 procedures severe exacerbations were reduced by 32% in the 3-12 months post therapy with  
37 an increase in exacerbation events in the peri-procedure period [21]. This reduction in  
38 exacerbations was maintained over a 5 year follow up period [217]. BT is currently performed  
39 only in trained centers for both managing severe asthma and handling BT.  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

#### 48 49 Emerging biologics

##### 50 51 Anti-IL4R: Dupilumab

52  
53 Dupilumab reduced severe exacerbations in all-comers irrespectively of the atopic status, with  
54 the greatest reduction in those with elevated FeNO and/or eosinophilic inflammation, and  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 reduced oral corticosteroid requirement for severe asthmatics receiving maintenance oral  
4 corticosteroids [68, 218, 219]. Studies of IL4 inhibition alone and more recently of the anti-IL13  
5 biologics lebrikizumab [220] and tralokinumab [221] have failed to meet their primary  
6 endpoints of exacerbation reduction, suggesting that inhibition of both IL-4 and 13, as with  
7 anti-IL4R, is necessary to observe sufficient clinical efficacy for this aspect of the disease.  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12

### 13 14 15 16 Anti-TSLP: Tezepelumab

17  
18 A recent phase II trial investigated the impact of tezepelumab on exacerbation rates in 584  
19 moderate-to-severe asthmatics, showing a 60-70% reduction in exacerbations in all-comers  
20 across dosing regimens [222]. Effects were observed irrespective of markers of T2  
21 inflammation, although substantial reductions in these measures were noted, suggesting that  
22 targeting upstream cytokine pathways may reduce exacerbations across inflammatory profiles.  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

### 31 CRTH2 antagonists, anti IL17 and others

32  
33 ILC2 are now seen as the pivotal cells of T2 airway inflammation. Because they specifically  
34 express the PGD2 receptor DP2 or CRTH2, a proof of concept study showed that anti-DP2  
35 treatment could significantly reduce the blood eosinophil count [223]. Whether this will be  
36 sufficient for preventing exacerbations is the aim of a larger ongoing phase III trial.  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43

44 The IL33-ST2 axis is also specifically targeting ILC2 [224] and pivotal studies are ongoing. In  
45 non T2 asthma, the relevance of blocking IL17 for preventing exacerbations is also currently  
46 being tested [225].  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51

### 52 Conclusion

53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 Reduction and ultimately elimination of severe exacerbations in severe asthma remains an  
4 important therapeutic target. In addition to corticosteroids and allergen  
5 avoidance/immunotherapy, the biologics targeting T2-immunity and eosinophilic  
6 inflammation (anti-IgE, IL-5, IL-4R and TSLP) reduce exacerbations. Whether other therapies  
7 that reduce eosinophilic inflammation such as anti-DP2, will demonstrate a similar efficacy  
8 remains to be determined. Beyond T2 inflammation, macrolide antibiotics and bronchial  
9 thermoplasty may have a role, but reducing severe exacerbations in non-T2 severe asthma  
10 remains an unmet need, although the scale of its importance once T2-mediated disease is  
11 adequately treated is uncertain.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23

## 24 **5. CONCLUSION AND BULLET POINTS FROM THE ELF**

25 Preventing severe exacerbations in asthma is very important from the perspective of people  
26 with asthma. Too many patients still die, whereas these deaths are likely preventable, from a  
27 severe exacerbation. In some countries asthma and respiratory deaths are still increasing,  
28 especially in non-severe and moderate asthma [84]. Why this is happening still needs to be  
29 explored but facilitating access to care and medications would probably be efficient.  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

- 37 • In all types of asthma: It is important to remain aware that severe exacerbations don't  
38 just happen in patients with the more severe types of asthma.
- 39 • Exacerbations and especially recurrent exacerbations are very debilitating for patients.  
40 More research is needed to avoid exacerbations and to break the cycle of recurrent  
41 exacerbations. The medications and treatments plans that are available at this time do  
42 not seem to be working well enough for all patients.
- 43 • Adherence: patients and physicians need to work together on improving adherence.  
44 Good communication between physician and patient is key. There are many factors that  
45 impede adherence for patients. Some straight-forward ways to support patients can be  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3 implemented easily like having dose-counters on all inhalators. It can be more  
4  
5 challenging to address patients developing additional behavior. All aspects require  
6  
7 continuous positive attention from physicians.  
8

- 9  
10 • Indoor and outdoor environmental factors: the advice to avoid environmental factors is  
11 an additional burden moreover because it is extremely complex to put into practice for  
12 patients. More and better advice needs to be given to patients on living conditions,  
13 occupational choices etc.  
14  
15
- 16 • Working together with patients in improving their asthma care is key. Many patients  
17 have good knowledge on their asthma and their reaction to medications. Not all patients  
18 have this insight and not all patients are able to manage their asthma on a daily basis.  
19  
20 We all need personalized help. E-health can support some patients, but only if these  
21 solutions are developed with patients and are sufficiently flexible and personalized.  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

29 Research needs and knowledge caps identified throughout this task force are summarized table  
30  
31 5.  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Table 4: Pivotal Phase 3 randomised clinical trials of licensed biologics (excluding anti-IgE)

Intervention	Reference	Population	Description of intervention/ duration	Effect on exacerbations
Mepolizumab Anti-IL5	MUSCA [205]	Adults and children (>12 years), n = 556 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Blood eosinophils ≥300/μl in last 12 months or ≥150/μl at screening	100mg SC Q4W 24 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 42% ↓ exacerbations requiring emergency department (ED) visit or hospitalization 32% No significant change in hospitalizations alone
	SIRIUS [226]	Adults (16 – 74 years), n = 135 Background therapy 5 to 35 mg/day of prednisone or its equivalent for > 6 months Blood eosinophil count ≥150 cells/μL at screening or ≥300 cells/μL in the last year	100mg SC Q4W 20 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 32% OR for glucocorticoid reduction 2.39 in mepolizumab group (0.008) Median glucocorticoid reduction 50% (vs 0% in controls)
	MENSA [5]	Adults and children (aged ≥12 years), n = 576 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Blood eosinophil count ≥150 cells/μL at screening or ≥300 cells/μL in the last year	75mg IV Q4W or 100mg SC Q4W 32 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 47 - 53% SC mepolizumab ↓ exacerbations requiring ED/hospitalization (61%) and exacerbations requiring hospitalization (69%) ↓ systemic glucocorticoid exposure 41%
	Pavord Lancet 2012 [53] (Phase 2b/3)	Adults and children (12 – 74 years), n = 621 ≥2 exacerbations in last year Sputum eosinophils ≥ 3%, FeNO ≥ 50 ppb, blood eosinophil count ≥ 300 cells/μL or deterioration in asthma control with ≤ 25% reduction in corticosteroid treatment (in the last year)	75mg IV Q4W or 250mg IV Q4W or 750mg IV Q4W 52 weeks	↓ exacerbations 39 - 52% Exacerbations requiring ED/hospitalization reduced across all groups Greatest reduction in exacerbations with baseline eosinophils > 500 cells/μL
Reslizumab Anti-IL-5	Castro [211]	Adults and children (12 – 75 years), n = 953 (study 1 n=489, study 2 n=464) ≥1 exacerbation in last year Blood eosinophil count ≥400 cells/μL	3mg/kg IV Q4W 52 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 54% ↓ exacerbations requiring OCS 57% ↓ exacerbations in those on OCS at baseline by 68% Exacerbations ↓ 64% if ≥4 exacerbations in last 12 months at baseline (vs. ↓ 32% if 1 exacerbation last 12 months)
Benralizumab Anti-IL-5R	ZONDA [214]	Adults (18 – 75 years), n = 220 Background therapy (7.5 – 40mg/day prednisolone or its equivalent for > 6 months) Blood eosinophils ≥150 cells/μL at screening	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 28 weeks	↓ exacerbation rate 55 - 70% Q8W Q8W dosing reduced exacerbations associated with ED visit or hospitalization by 93% OR for glucocorticoid reduction 4.1 Median glucocorticoid reduction 75% (vs 25% in controls)
	SIROCCO [64]	Adults and children (12 – 75 years), n = 1205 ≥2 exacerbations in last year	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 48 weeks	Eosinophil High (≥300 cells per μL): ↓ exacerbations 45 - 51% Q8W dosing reduced exacerbations associated with ED visit or hospitalization by 68%

	CALIMA [213]	As per SIROCCO, n = 306	30mg SC Q4W or Q8W 56 weeks	Eosinophil High ↓ exacerbations 28 - 36% No effect on hospitalizations/ED visits
Dupiluma b Anti- IL4Rα	Castro NEJM 2018 QUEST [68]	Adults and children (≥12 years), n = 1902 ≥ 1 exacerbation in last year	200mg SC Q2W or 300mg SC Q2W 52 weeks	↓ severe exacerbations 46% across treatment population ≥150 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 60% ≥300 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 67%
	VENTUR E [69]	Adults and children (≥12 years), n = 210 Background therapy (5 – 35mg/day prednisolone or equivalent for > 6 months)	300mg SC Q2W 24 weeks	↓ severe exacerbations 59% across treatment populations ≥150 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 58% ≥300 eosinophils/μL: ↓ exacerbations 71% Median glucocorticoid reduction 100% (vs 50% in controls)

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

Table 5. Research needs and knowledge gaps

Item	Research needs	Type of study design	Type of outcomes that need to be assessed
Definition of severe exacerbation	To assess in routine practice what is the most sensitive and specific definition (duration of OCS requirement, daily dose and cumulative dose)	Re-analysis of RCT and real-life trials where diaries and home monitoring were used Registries and cohorts	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Definition of severe exacerbation	To assess prediction models in real life cohorts	Re-analysis of RCT and real-life trials where diaries and home monitoring were used Registries and cohorts	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Definition of severe exacerbation	To establish composite scores to assess immediate risk	Retrospective analysis of databases of exacerbations	Short term outcomes: admission, ICU, intubation, deaths, treatment related adverse events
Strategy	To assess the impact of self-monitoring on asthma control and prevention of exacerbations	Randomised controlled trials comparing conventional vs self-monitoring strategy	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Strategy	To assess the effectiveness of interventions to prevent human rhinovirus carriage	Randomised controlled trials comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the weight of blood eosinophilia compared to other risk factors at the individual level	Prospective cohort studies integrating all risk factors	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits and risks of genetic analysis awareness at the individual level to predict severe exacerbation and asthma trajectory	Test acceptability RCT comparing strategies of management in patients with known at-risk allele carriage vs routine	Severe exacerbation rates in patients and relatives, in particular in children with high risk scores (familial risk, patients already admitted in ICU)
Risk factor/trigger	To more accurately know the mechanisms, rate and risk factors of deaths attributable to severe exacerbations that	Multiple exhaustive reviews of asthma deaths.	Biology, pathology



	occurred despite an optimal preventive strategy and acute management	Worldwide collection of cases where death occurred despite optimal management	
Risk factor/trigger	To identify and weight all risk factors associated with death, ICU, ED and frequent exacerbations	Cohorts and registries of compelling cases	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To identify tools for assessing/improving adherence	RCT comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of eHealth-connected devices to prevent severe exacerbation	RCT comparing strategies	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	to assess tools / resources / methods (e.g. shared decision making, systematic multidisciplinary approaches, referral to asthma centres) to improve patient-HCP partnership	Studies assessing changes in patient-HCP partnership through training, education programs, etc.	Parallel studies associating changes in patient-HCP partnership with changes in severe exacerbation rates
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of using air quality sensors	RCT in selected populations	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED, admissions, need for ICU
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the benefits of more accurately evidence the role of occupational triggers	Basic science, models, psycho and sociology	Rooms of exposition with inflammatory / lung function monitoring HRQOL
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the preventive benefits of convincingly support patient when choosing careers	Prospective cohorts with randomized strategies	In teenagers/young adults and in people changing of occupation
Risk factor/trigger	To assess the exact role of drugs in severe exacerbations.(incidence, dose, diagnosis, prevention)	Prospective cohorts with randomized strategies. Models of exposition in animals and cell models	Prospective recording of severe exacerbation. Maximal documentation of each event.

Treatment of severe exacerbation	To define the value of CXR and arterial blood gases in acute management	Randomized controlled trials	Dedicated populations such as ED attending
Treatment of severe exacerbation	To establish an optimal scheme for SABA administration	Randomized controlled trials comparing different strategies of SABA administration (dose, route, frequency, duration, associated treatment)	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events
Treatment of severe exacerbation	To assess the role of ICS during the exacerbation and at discharge	Randomized controlled trials	Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, adverse events
Treatment of severe exacerbation	To assess the benefits of hydration, physiotherapy, exercise avoidance during exacerbation; optimal time to go back to exercise	Randomized controlled trials, comparative studies	Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, adverse events, quality of life
Prevention	To assess whether LTRAs add-on reduce severe exacerbations in severe asthmatics	Randomized controlled trials	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events
Prevention	To assess the benefits of measures such as nocturnal temperature controlled laminar flow	Randomized controlled trials	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events
Prevention	to assess the use of biologics in the setting of acute exacerbation	Randomized controlled trials	Rates of relapses, speed of recovery, disease associated and hospital acquired-adverse events, quality of life
From the patients' perspective	Overall, to find treatments for patients not responding well to currently available medications and treatments plans	Randomized controlled trials in non eligible patients to existing drugs (low T2, failure of currently available biologics for example)	Rates of OCS bursts $\geq$ 5d, ED discharge vs admissions, need for ICU, adverse events

Table 6.

Section no	Section title	Keypoints
1	<b>Definitions</b>	A definition based on five days of OCS is preferred to three to better fit with the recognized harmfulness of cumulative doses of OCS; a composite score assessing risk factors (age, comorbidities, history) would be helpful.
2	<b>Triggers and risk factors</b>	Within trajectories of asthma, the frequent exacerbator phenotype is a reality, and is more frequently associated with a T2 pattern
2A	<i>Assessment of risk, What is cause and what is effect</i>	T2 inflammation and lack of adequate treatment more likely exposes to exacerbation rather than the opposite.
2B	<i>Modifiable vs non-modifiable factors &amp; Mathematical models</i>	Viral infections are now considered modifiable, associated with prevention of noxious environmental exposures.
2C	<i>Risk Factors and epidemiology, pheno/geno/endotypes</i>	Susceptibility to severe exacerbations is not always shared with susceptibility to asthma severity. Low T2 asthma and other newly identified endotypes are currently orphans of targeted drugs.
2D	<i>Personality type – Gender, Psychosocial factors. Perception, Compliance/adherence</i>	Multidisciplinary approaches may help in identifying and managing better patients at risk of death, ICU admission and severe exacerbations
2E	<i>Virus / Allergens</i>	Rhinoviruses are ideal culprit fostering severity of exacerbations amplifiable by allergens. No dedicated treatment or preventive strategy currently exist.
2F	<i>Environmental air pollution indoor/outdoor pollution &amp; occupational factors</i>	Although obvious, the environmental impact is under-recognized and occupational factors insufficiently assessed and evidenced in practice.
2G	<i>Drugs &amp; irritants / Overdose of <math>\beta_2</math>-agonists</i>	Dangers of high SABA use includes worsening of asthma itself.
3	<b>Acute Management</b>	Systemic corticosteroids and bronchodilators are still the cornerstones of the acute management. Because some asthma deaths are not preventable, there is a place to develop new drugs on top of standard of care
4	<b>Prevention</b>	Inhaled corticosteroids +/- bronchodilators and in eligible patients with more severe disease biologics prevent severe exacerbations.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

<b>5</b>	<b>ELF Patient perspective</b>	The currently available treatments and supports are not working well enough for all. More research and partnership are needed.
----------	--------------------------------	--

## References

1. (\*NEW) 2018 GINA Report: Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention [Internet]. Global Initiative for Asthma - GINA [cited 2018 Sep 19]. Available from: <https://ginasthma.org/2018-gina-report-global-strategy-for-asthma-management-and-prevention/>.
2. Salmeron S, Liard R, Elkharrat D, Muir J, Neukirch F, Ellrodt A. Asthma severity and adequacy of management in accident and emergency departments in France: a prospective study. *Lancet* 2001; 358: 629–635.
3. Chung KF, Wenzel SE, Brozek JL, Bush A, Castro M, Sterk PJ, Adcock IM, Bateman ED, Bel EH, Bleecker ER, Boulet L-P, Brightling C, Chanez P, Dahlen S-E, Djukanovic R, Frey U, Gaga M, Gibson P, Hamid Q, Jajour NN, Mauad T, Sorkness RL, Teague WG. International ERS/ATS guidelines on definition, evaluation and treatment of severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2014; 43: 343–373.
4. Chipps BE, Haselkorn T, Paknis B, Ortiz B, Bleecker ER, Kianifard F, Foreman AJ, Szeffler SJ, Zeiger RS, Epidemiology and Natural History of Asthma: Outcomes and Treatment Regimens Study Group. More than a decade follow-up in patients with severe or difficult-to-treat asthma: The Epidemiology and Natural History of Asthma: Outcomes and Treatment Regimens (TENOR) II. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2018; 141: 1590-1597.e9.
5. Ortega HG, Liu MC, Pavord ID, Brusselle GG, FitzGerald JM, Chetta A, Humbert M, Katz LE, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Chanez P, MENSA Investigators. Mepolizumab treatment in patients with severe eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1198–1207.
6. Nasser S. An imperfect “PAST” Lessons learned from the National Review of Asthma Deaths (NRAD) UK. *Respir. Res.* 2016; 17: 87.
7. Healthcare Quality Improvement Partnership, Royal College of Physicians of London. Why asthma still kills: the National review of asthma deaths (NRAD). Confidential enquiry report May 2014 Confidential enquiry report May 2014. 2014.
8. Bousquet J, Khaltaev N, Cruz A, Yorgancioglu A, Chuchalin A. International European Respiratory Society/American Thoracic Society guidelines on severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2014; 44: 1377–1378.
9. Custovic A, Johnston SL, Pavord I, Gaga M, Fabbri L, Bel EH, Le Souëf P, Lötvalld J, Demoly P, Akdis CA, Ryan D, Mäkelä MJ, Martinez F, Holloway JW, Saglani S, O’Byrne P, Papi A, Sergejeva S, Magnan A, Del Giacco S, Kalayci O, Hamelmann E, Papadopoulos NG. EAACI position statement on asthma exacerbations and severe asthma. *Allergy* 2013; 68: 1520–1531.
10. Bush A, Zar HJ. WHO universal definition of severe asthma. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 11: 115–121.
11. Bousquet J, Mantzouranis E, Cruz AA, Ait-Khaled N, Baena-Cagnani CE, Bleecker ER, Brightling CE, Burney P, Bush A, Busse WW, Casale TB, Chan-Yeung M, Chen R, Chowdhury B, Chung KF, Dahl R, Drazen JM, Fabbri LM, Holgate ST, Kauffmann F,

- 1  
2  
3 Haahtela T, Khaltaev N, Kiley JP, Masjedi MR, Mohammad Y, O'Byrne P, Partridge MR,  
4 Rabe KF, Togias A, van Weel C, et al. Uniform definition of asthma severity, control,  
5 and exacerbations: document presented for the World Health Organization  
6 Consultation on Severe Asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2010; 126: 926–938.  
7
- 8 12. Reddel HK, Taylor DR, Bateman ED, Boulet L-P, Boushey HA, Busse WW, Casale TB,  
9 Chanez P, Enright PL, Gibson PG, de Jongste JC, Kerstjens HAM, Lazarus SC, Levy ML,  
10 O'Byrne PM, Partridge MR, Pavord ID, Sears MR, Sterk PJ, Stoloff SW, Sullivan SD,  
11 Szeffler SJ, Thomas MD, Wenzel SE, American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory  
12 Society Task Force on Asthma Control and Exacerbations. An official American  
13 Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society statement: asthma control and  
14 exacerbations: standardizing endpoints for clinical asthma trials and clinical practice.  
15 *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2009; 180: 59–99.  
16
- 17 13. Miller MK, Lee JH, Blanc PD, Pasta DJ, Gujrathi S, Barron H, Wenzel SE, Weiss ST,  
18 TENOR Study Group. TENOR risk score predicts healthcare in adults with severe or  
19 difficult-to-treat asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2006; 28: 1145–1155.  
20
- 21 14. Price DB, Trudo F, Voorham J, Xu X, Kerkhof M, Ling Zhi Jie J, Tran TN. Adverse  
22 outcomes from initiation of systemic corticosteroids for asthma: long-term  
23 observational study. *J Asthma Allergy* 2018; 11: 193–204.  
24
- 25 15. O'Byrne PM, Pedersen S, Lamm CJ, Tan WC, Busse WW, START Investigators Group.  
26 Severe exacerbations and decline in lung function in asthma. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care*  
27 *Med.* 2009; 179: 19–24.  
28
- 29 16. Green RH, Brightling CE, McKenna S, Hargadon B, Parker D, Bradding P, Wardlaw AJ,  
30 Pavord ID. Asthma exacerbations and sputum eosinophil counts: a randomised  
31 controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; 360: 1715–1721.  
32
- 33 17. Pauwels RA, Löfdahl CG, Postma DS, Tattersfield AE, O'Byrne P, Barnes PJ, Ullman A.  
34 Effect of inhaled formoterol and budesonide on exacerbations of asthma. Formoterol  
35 and Corticosteroids Establishing Therapy (FACET) International Study Group. *N. Engl.*  
36 *J. Med.* 1997; 337: 1405–1411.  
37
- 38 18. Jayaram L, Pizzichini MM, Cook RJ, Boulet L-P, Lemièrè C, Pizzichini E, Cartier A,  
39 Hussack P, Goldsmith CH, Laviolette M, Parameswaran K, Hargreave FE. Determining  
40 asthma treatment by monitoring sputum cell counts: effect on exacerbations. *Eur.*  
41 *Respir. J.* 2006; 27: 483–494.  
42
- 43 19. Demoly P, Crestani B, Leroyer C, Magnan A, Mounedji N, Humbert M. Control and  
44 exacerbation of asthma: a survey of more than 3000 French physicians. *Allergy* 2004;  
45 59: 920–926.  
46
- 47 20. Fuhlbrigge A, Peden D, Apter AJ, Boushey HA, Camargo CA, Gern J, Heymann PW,  
48 Martinez FD, Mauger D, Teague WG, Blaisdell C. Asthma outcomes: exacerbations. *J.*  
49 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2012; 129: S34-48.  
50
- 51 21. Castro M, Rubin AS, Laviolette M, Fiterman J, De Andrade Lima M, Shah PL, Fiss E,  
52 Olivenstein R, Thomson NC, Niven RM, Pavord ID, Simoff M, Duhamel DR, McEvoy C,  
53 Barbers R, Ten Hacken NHT, Wechsler ME, Holmes M, Phillips MJ, Erzurum S, Lunn W,  
54 Israel E, Jarjour N, Kraft M, Shargill NS, Quiring J, Berry SM, Cox G, AIR2 Trial Study  
55 Group. Effectiveness and safety of bronchial thermoplasty in the treatment of severe  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 asthma: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled clinical trial. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2010; 181: 116–124.
- 4  
5  
6 22. Murphy VE, Clifton VL, Gibson PG. The effect of cigarette smoking on asthma control  
7 during exacerbations in pregnant women. *Thorax* 2010; 65: 739–744.
- 8  
9 23. Sont JK, Willems LN, Bel EH, van Krieken JH, Vandenbroucke JP, Sterk PJ. Clinical  
10 control and histopathologic outcome of asthma when using airway  
11 hyperresponsiveness as an additional guide to long-term treatment. The AMPUL  
12 Study Group. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 1999; 159: 1043–1051.
- 13  
14 24. Petsky HL, Cates CJ, Li A, Kynaston JA, Turner C, Chang AB. Tailored interventions  
15 based on exhaled nitric oxide versus clinical symptoms for asthma in children and  
16 adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; : CD006340.
- 17  
18 25. Smith AD, Cowan JO, Brassett KP, Herbison GP, Taylor DR. Use of exhaled nitric oxide  
19 measurements to guide treatment in chronic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2005; 352:  
20 2163–2173.
- 21  
22 26. Szeffler SJ, Mitchell H, Sorkness CA, Gergen PJ, O'Connor GT, Morgan WJ, Kattan M,  
23 Pongratic JA, Teach SJ, Bloomberg GR, Eggleston PA, Gruchalla RS, Kerckmar CM, Liu  
24 AH, Wildfire JJ, Curry MD, Busse WW. Management of asthma based on exhaled nitric  
25 oxide in addition to guideline-based treatment for inner-city adolescents and young  
26 adults: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008; 372: 1065–1072.
- 27  
28 27. Powell H, Murphy VE, Taylor DR, Hensley MJ, McCaffery K, Giles W, Clifton VL, Gibson  
29 PG. Management of asthma in pregnancy guided by measurement of fraction of  
30 exhaled nitric oxide: a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2011; 378:  
31 983–990.
- 32  
33 28. Petsky HL, Cates CJ, Kew KM, Chang AB. Tailoring asthma treatment on eosinophilic  
34 markers (exhaled nitric oxide or sputum eosinophils): a systematic review and meta-  
35 analysis. *Thorax* 2018; 73: 1110–1119.
- 36  
37 29. Yii ACA, Tan JHY, Lapperre TS, Chan AKW, Low SY, Ong TH, Tan KL, Chotirmall SH,  
38 Sterk PJ, Koh MS. Long-term future risk of severe exacerbations: Distinct 5-year  
39 trajectories of problematic asthma. *Allergy* 2017; 72: 1398–1405.
- 40  
41 30. Miller MK, Lee JH, Miller DP, Wenzel SE. Recent asthma exacerbations: A key  
42 predictor of future exacerbations. *Respiratory Medicine* 2007; 101: 481–489.
- 43  
44 31. Heikkilä K, Madsen IEH, Nyberg ST, Fransson EI, Westerlund H, Westerholm PJM,  
45 Virtanen M, Vahtera J, Väänänen A, Theorell T, Suominen SB, Shipley MJ, Salo P,  
46 Rugulies R, Pentti J, Pejtersen JH, Oksanen T, Nordin M, Nielsen ML, Kouvonen A,  
47 Koskinen A, Koskenvuo M, Knutsson A, Ferrie JE, Dragano N, Burr H, Borritz M,  
48 Bjorner JB, Alfredsson L, Batty GD, et al. Job strain and the risk of severe asthma  
49 exacerbations: a meta-analysis of individual-participant data from 100 000 European  
50 men and women. *Allergy* 2014; 69: 775–783.
- 51  
52  
53 32. Bjermer L. The role of small airway disease in asthma. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2014; 20:  
54 23–30.
- 55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 33. Gelb AF, Schein A, Nussbaum E, Shinar CM, Aelony Y, Aharonian H, Zamel N. Risk  
4 factors for near-fatal asthma. *Chest* 2004; 126: 1138–1146.  
5  
6 34. Alvarez GG, Fitzgerald JM. A systematic review of the psychological risk factors  
7 associated with near fatal asthma or fatal asthma. *Respiration* 2007; 74: 228–236.  
8  
9 35. Alvarez GG, Schulzer M, Jung D, Fitzgerald JM. A systematic review of risk factors  
10 associated with near-fatal and fatal asthma. *Can. Respir. J.* 2005; 12: 265–270.  
11  
12 36. Butler C, Heaney LG. Risk factors of frequent exacerbations in difficult-to-treat  
13 asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2006; 27: 1324–1325; author reply 1325–1326.  
14  
15 37. de Groot JC, Amelink M, de Nijs SB, Plaat R, Reitsma BH, Storm H, Bel EHD, Ten Brinke  
16 A. Risk factors for frequent severe exacerbations in late-onset eosinophilic asthma.  
17 *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2015; 192: 899–902.  
18  
19 38. Green RM, Custovic A, Sanderson G, Hunter J, Johnston SL, Woodcock A. Synergism  
20 between allergens and viruses and risk of hospital admission with asthma: case-  
21 control study. *BMJ* 2002; 324: 763.  
22  
23 39. Gonzalez-Barcala F-J, Calvo-Alvarez U, Garcia-Sanz M-T, Bourdin A, Pose-Reino A,  
24 Carreira J-M, Moure-Gonzalez J-D, Garcia-Couceiro N, Valdes-Cuadrado L, Muñoz X.  
25 Characteristics and prognosis of near-fatal asthma exacerbations. *Am. J. Med. Sci.*  
26 2015; 350: 98–102.  
27  
28 40. Jackson DJ, Sykes A, Mallia P, Johnston SL. Asthma exacerbations: origin, effect, and  
29 prevention. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2011; 128: 1165–1174.  
30  
31 41. Martinez-Moragón E, Plaza V, Serrano J, Picado C, Galdiz JB, López-Viña A, Sanchis J.  
32 Near-fatal asthma related to menstruation. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2004; 113: 242–  
33 244.  
34  
35 42. Kupczyk M, Haque S, Sterk PJ, Niżankowska-Mogilnicka E, Papi A, Bel EH, Chanez P,  
36 Dahlén B, Gaga M, Gjomarkaj M, Howarth PH, Johnston SL, Joos GF, Kannies F,  
37 Tzortzaki E, James A, Middelveldt RJM, Dahlén S-E, BIOAIR investigators. Detection of  
38 exacerbations in asthma based on electronic diary data: results from the 1-year  
39 prospective BIOAIR study. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 611–618.  
40  
41 43. Tattersfield AE, Postma DS, Barnes PJ, Svensson K, Bauer CA, O’Byrne PM, Löfdahl CG,  
42 Pauwels RA, Ullman A. Exacerbations of asthma: a descriptive study of 425 severe  
43 exacerbations. The FACET International Study Group. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*  
44 1999; 160: 594–599.  
45  
46 44. Romagnoli M, Caramori G, Braccioni F, Ravenna F, Barreiro E, Siafakas NM, Vignola  
47 AM, Chanez P, Fabbri LM, Papi A, ENFUMOSA Study Group. Near-fatal asthma  
48 phenotype in the ENFUMOSA Cohort. *Clin. Exp. Allergy* 2007; 37: 552–557.  
49  
50 45. Honkoop PJ, Simpson A, Bonini M, Snoeck-Stroband JB, Meah S, Fan Chung K, Usmani  
51 OS, Fowler S, Sont JK. MyAirCoach: the use of home-monitoring and mHealth systems  
52 to predict deterioration in asthma control and the occurrence of asthma  
53 exacerbations; study protocol of an observational study. *BMJ Open* 2017; 7: e013935.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



- 1  
2  
3 46. Bateman ED, Buhl R, O'Byrne PM, Humbert M, Reddel HK, Sears MR, Jenkins C,  
4 Harrison TW, Quirce S, Peterson S, Eriksson G. Development and validation of a novel  
5 risk score for asthma exacerbations: The risk score for exacerbations. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
6 *Immunol.* 2015; 135: 1457-1464.e4.  
7
- 8 47. Bateman ED, Reddel HK, Eriksson G, Peterson S, Ostlund O, Sears MR, Jenkins C,  
9 Humbert M, Buhl R, Harrison TW, Quirce S, O'Byrne PM. Overall asthma control: the  
10 relationship between current control and future risk. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2010;  
11 125: 600–608, 608.e1-608.e6.  
12
- 13 48. Jia CE, Zhang HP, Lv Y, Liang R, Jiang YQ, Powell H, Fu JJ, Wang L, Gibson PG, Wang G.  
14 The Asthma Control Test and Asthma Control Questionnaire for assessing asthma  
15 control: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 131:  
16 695–703.  
17
- 18 49. Sato R, Tomita K, Sano H, Ichihashi H, Yamagata S, Sano A, Yamagata T, Miyara T,  
19 Iwanaga T, Muraki M, Tohda Y. The Strategy for Predicting Future Exacerbation of  
20 Asthma Using a Combination of the Asthma Control Test and Lung Function Test.  
21 *Journal of Asthma* 2009; 46: 677–682.  
22
- 23 50. Stern G, de Jongste J, van der Valk R, Baraldi E, Carraro S, Thamrin C, Frey U.  
24 Fluctuation phenotyping based on daily fraction of exhaled nitric oxide values in  
25 asthmatic children. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology* 2011; 128: 293–300.  
26
- 27 51. McFadden ER, Strauss L, Hejal R, Galan G, Dixon L. Comparison of two dosage  
28 regimens of albuterol in acute asthma. *The American Journal of Medicine* 1998; 105:  
29 12–17.  
30
- 31 52. Turner MO, Noertjojo K, Vedal S, Bai T, Crump S, Fitzgerald JM. Risk factors for near-  
32 fatal asthma. A case-control study in hospitalized patients with asthma. *Am. J. Respir.*  
33 *Crit. Care Med.* 1998; 157: 1804–1809.  
34
- 35 53. Loymans RJB, Honkoop PJ, Termeer EH, Snoeck-Stroband JB, Assendelft WJJ,  
36 Schermer TRJ, Chung KF, Sousa AR, Sterk PJ, Reddel HK, Sont JK, Ter Riet G.  
37 Identifying patients at risk for severe exacerbations of asthma: development and  
38 external validation of a multivariable prediction model. *Thorax* 2016; 71: 838–846.  
39
- 40 54. Denlinger LC, Phillips BR, Ramratnam S, Ross K, Bhakta NR, Cardet JC, Castro M,  
41 Peters SP, Phipatanakul W, Aujla S, Bacharier LB, Bleecker ER, Comhair SAA,  
42 Coverstone A, DeBoer M, Erzurum SC, Fain SB, Fajt M, Fitzpatrick AM, Gaffin J, Gaston  
43 B, Hastie AT, Hawkins GA, Holguin F, Irani A-M, Israel E, Levy BD, Ly N, Meyers DA,  
44 Moore WC, et al. Inflammatory and Comorbid Features of Patients with Severe  
45 Asthma and Frequent Exacerbations. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2017; 195: 302–  
46 313.  
47
- 48 55. Murray CS. Study of modifiable risk factors for asthma exacerbations: virus infection  
49 and allergen exposure increase the risk of asthma hospital admissions in children.  
50 *Thorax* 2006; 61: 376–382.  
51
- 52 56. Panico L, Stuart B, Bartley M, Kelly Y. Asthma trajectories in early childhood:  
53 identifying modifiable factors. *PLoS One* 2014; 9: e111922.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 57. Smith LA, Bokhour B, Hohman KH, Miroschnik I, Kleinman KP, Cohn E, Cortes DE, Galbraith A, Rand C, Lieu TA. Modifiable Risk Factors for Suboptimal Control and Controller Medication Underuse Among Children With Asthma. *PEDIATRICS* 2008; 122: 760–769.
- 4  
5  
6  
7  
8 58. Warman K, Silver EJ, Wood PR. Modifiable Risk Factors for Asthma Morbidity in Bronx Versus Other Inner-City Children. *Journal of Asthma* 2009; 46: 995–1000.
- 9  
10  
11 59. Eggo RM, Scott JG, Galvani AP, Meyers LA. Respiratory virus transmission dynamics determine timing of asthma exacerbation peaks: Evidence from a population-level model. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 2016; 113: 2194–2199.
- 12  
13  
14  
15 60. Jamieson KC, Warner SM, Leigh R, Proud D. Rhinovirus in the Pathogenesis and Clinical Course of Asthma. *Chest* 2015; 148: 1508–1516.
- 16  
17  
18 61. Clarke DL, Davis NHE, Majithiya JB, Piper SC, Lewis A, Sleeman MA, Corkill DJ, May RD. Development of a mouse model mimicking key aspects of a viral asthma exacerbation. *Clinical Science* 2014; 126: 567–580.
- 19  
20  
21  
22 62. Gavala ML, Bertics PJ, Gern JE. Rhinoviruses, allergic inflammation, and asthma. *Immunol. Rev.* 2011; 242: 69–90.
- 23  
24  
25 63. Price DB, Rigazio A, Campbell JD, Bleecker ER, Corrigan CJ, Thomas M, Wenzel SE, Wilson AM, Small MB, Gopalan G, Ashton VL, Burden A, Hillyer EV, Kerkhof M, Pavord ID. Blood eosinophil count and prospective annual asthma disease burden: a UK cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 849–858.
- 26  
27  
28  
29  
30 64. Bleecker ER, FitzGerald JM, Chanez P, Papi A, Weinstein SF, Barker P, Sproule S, Gilmartin G, Aurivillius M, Werkström V, Goldman M, SIROCCO study investigators. Efficacy and safety of benralizumab for patients with severe asthma uncontrolled with high-dosage inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting  $\beta$ 2-agonists (SIROCCO): a randomised, multicentre, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 2115–2127.
- 31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37 65. Pavord ID, Korn S, Howarth P, Bleecker ER, Buhl R, Keene ON, Ortega H, Chanez P. Mepolizumab for severe eosinophilic asthma (DREAM): a multicentre, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2012; 380: 651–659.
- 38  
39  
40  
41  
42 66. Nowak RM, Parker JM, Silverman RA, Rowe BH, Smithline H, Khan F, Fiening JP, Kim K, Molfino NA. A randomized trial of benralizumab, an antiinterleukin 5 receptor  $\alpha$  monoclonal antibody, after acute asthma. *Am J Emerg Med* 2015; 33: 14–20.
- 43  
44  
45  
46 67. Agusti A, Bel E, Thomas M, Vogelmeier C, Brusselle G, Holgate S, Humbert M, Jones P, Gibson PG, Vestbo J, Beasley R, Pavord ID. Treatable traits: toward precision medicine of chronic airway diseases. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2016; 47: 410–419.
- 47  
48  
49  
50 68. Castro M, Corren J, Pavord ID, Maspero J, Wenzel S, Rabe KF, Busse WW, Ford L, Sher L, FitzGerald JM, Katelaris C, Tohda Y, Zhang B, Staudinger H, Pirozzi G, Amin N, Ruddy M, Akinlade B, Khan A, Chao J, Martincova R, Graham NMH, Hamilton JD, Swanson BN, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Teper A. Dupilumab Efficacy and Safety in Moderate-to-Severe Uncontrolled Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 2486–2496.
- 51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 69. Rabe KF, Nair P, Brusselle G, Maspero JF, Castro M, Sher L, Zhu H, Hamilton JD,  
4 Swanson BN, Khan A, Chao J, Staudinger H, Pirozzi G, Antoni C, Amin N, Ruddy M,  
5 Akinlade B, Graham NMH, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Teper A. Efficacy and Safety of  
6 Dupilumab in Glucocorticoid-Dependent Severe Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378:  
7 2475–2485.  
8  
9 70. Reddel HK, Bateman ED, Becker A, Boulet L-P, Cruz AA, Drazen JM, Haahtela T, Hurd  
10 SS, Inoue H, de Jongste JC, Lemanske RF, Levy ML, O'Byrne PM, Paggiaro P, Pedersen  
11 SE, Pizzichini E, Soto-Quiroz M, Szeffler SJ, Wong GWK, FitzGerald JM. A summary of  
12 the new GINA strategy: a roadmap to asthma control. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2015; 46: 622–  
13 639.  
14  
15 71. Bønnelykke K, Sleiman P, Nielsen K, Kreiner-Møller E, Mercader JM, Belgrave D, den  
16 Dekker HT, Husby A, Sevelsted A, Faura-Tellez G, Mortensen LJ, Paternoster L, Flaaten  
17 R, Mølgaard A, Smart DE, Thomsen PF, Rasmussen MA, Bonàs-Guarch S, Holst C, Nohr  
18 EA, Yadav R, March ME, Blicher T, Lackie PM, Jaddoe VVW, Simpson A, Holloway JW,  
19 Duijts L, Custovic A, Davies DE, et al. A genome-wide association study identifies  
20 CDHR3 as a susceptibility locus for early childhood asthma with severe exacerbations.  
21 *Nat. Genet.* 2014; 46: 51–55.  
22  
23 72. McGeachie MJ, Wu AC, Tse SM, Clemmer GL, Sordillo J, Himes BE, Lasky-Su J, Chase  
24 RP, Martinez FD, Weeke P, Shaffer CM, Xu H, Denny JC, Roden DM, Panettieri RA,  
25 Raby BA, Weiss ST, Tantisira KG. CTNNA3 and SEMA3D: Promising loci for asthma  
26 exacerbation identified through multiple genome-wide association studies. *J. Allergy*  
27 *Clin. Immunol.* 2015; 136: 1503–1510.  
28  
29 73. Grotenboer NS, Ketelaar ME, Koppelman GH, Nawijn MC. Decoding asthma:  
30 translating genetic variation in IL33 and IL1RL1 into disease pathophysiology. *J.*  
31 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 131: 856–865.  
32  
33 74. Ober C, Yao T-C. The genetics of asthma and allergic disease: a 21st century  
34 perspective. *Immunol. Rev.* 2011; 242: 10–30.  
35  
36 75. Torgerson DG, Ampleford EJ, Chiu GY, Gauderman WJ, Gignoux CR, Graves PE, Himes  
37 BE, Levin AM, Mathias RA, Hancock DB, Baurley JW, Eng C, Stern DA, Celedón JC,  
38 Rafaels N, Capurso D, Conti DV, Roth LA, Soto-Quiros M, Togias A, Li X, Myers RA,  
39 Romieu I, Van Den Berg DJ, Hu D, Hansel NN, Hernandez RD, Israel E, Salam MT,  
40 Galanter J, et al. Meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies of asthma in  
41 ethnically diverse North American populations. *Nat. Genet.* 2011; 43: 887–892.  
42  
43 76. Schuijs MJ, Willart MA, Vergote K, Gras D, Deswarte K, Ege MJ, Madeira FB, Beyaert R,  
44 van Loo G, Bracher F, von Mutius E, Chanez P, Lambrecht BN, Hammad H. Farm dust  
45 and endotoxin protect against allergy through A20 induction in lung epithelial cells.  
46 *Science* 2015; 349: 1106–1110.  
47  
48 77. Meyers DA, Bleecker ER, Holloway JW, Holgate ST. Asthma genetics and personalised  
49 medicine. *Lancet Respir Med* 2014; 2: 405–415.  
50  
51 78. Wan Yi, Shrine NRG, Soler Artigas M, Wain LV, Blakey JD, Moffatt MF, Bush A, Chung  
52 KF, Cookson WOCM, Strachan DP, Heaney L, Al-Momani B a. H, Mansur AH, Manney  
53 S, Thomson NC, Chaudhuri R, Brightling CE, Bafadhel M, Singapuri A, Niven R,  
54 Simpson A, Holloway JW, Howarth PH, Hui J, Musk AW, James AL, Australian Asthma  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 Genetics Consortium, Brown MA, Baltic S, Ferreira M a. R, et al. Genome-wide  
4 association study to identify genetic determinants of severe asthma. *Thorax* 2012; 67:  
5 762–768.  
6
- 7 79. Moffatt MF, Gut IG, Demenais F, Strachan DP, Bouzigon E, Heath S, von Mutius E,  
8 Farrall M, Lathrop M, Cookson WOCM, GABRIEL Consortium. A large-scale,  
9 consortium-based genomewide association study of asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2010;  
10 363: 1211–1221.  
11
- 12 80. Wenzel SE, Balzar S, Ampleford E, Hawkins GA, Busse WW, Calhoun WJ, Castro M,  
13 Chung KF, Erzurum S, Gaston B, Israel E, Teague WG, Curran-Everett D, Meyers DA,  
14 Bleecker ER. IL4R alpha mutations are associated with asthma exacerbations and  
15 mast cell/IgE expression. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2007; 175: 570–576.  
16
- 17 81. Slager RE, Otulana BA, Hawkins GA, Yen YP, Peters SP, Wenzel SE, Meyers DA,  
18 Bleecker ER. IL-4 receptor polymorphisms predict reduction in asthma exacerbations  
19 during response to an anti-IL-4 receptor  $\alpha$  antagonist. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2012;  
20 130: 516-522.e4.  
21
- 22 82. Dahlin A, Denny J, Roden DM, Brilliant MH, Ingram C, Kitchner TE, Linneman JG,  
23 Shaffer CM, Weeke P, Xu H, Kubo M, Tamari M, Clemmer GL, Ziniti J, McGeachie MJ,  
24 Tantisira KG, Weiss ST, Wu AC. CMTR1 is associated with increased asthma  
25 exacerbations in patients taking inhaled corticosteroids. *Immun Inflamm Dis* 2015; 3:  
26 350–359.  
27
- 28 83. Suissa S, Ernst P, Benayoun S, Baltzan M, Cai B. Low-dose inhaled corticosteroids and  
29 the prevention of death from asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2000; 343: 332–336.  
30
- 31 84. Levy ML. The national review of asthma deaths: what did we learn and what needs to  
32 change? *Breathe (Sheff)* 2015; 11: 14–24.  
33
- 34 85. Lötvall J, Akdis CA, Bacharier LB, Bjermer L, Casale TB, Custovic A, Lemanske RF,  
35 Wardlaw AJ, Wenzel SE, Greenberger PA. Asthma endotypes: a new approach to  
36 classification of disease entities within the asthma syndrome. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
37 2011; 127: 355–360.  
38
- 39 86. Moore WC, Meyers DA, Wenzel SE, Teague WG, Li H, Li X, D’Agostino R, Castro M,  
40 Curran-Everett D, Fitzpatrick AM, Gaston B, Jarjour NN, Sorkness R, Calhoun WJ,  
41 Chung KF, Comhair SAA, Dweik RA, Israel E, Peters SP, Busse WW, Erzurum SC,  
42 Bleecker ER, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute’s Severe Asthma Research  
43 Program. Identification of asthma phenotypes using cluster analysis in the Severe  
44 Asthma Research Program. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2010; 181: 315–323.  
45
- 46 87. Lefaudeux D, De Meulder B, Loza MJ, Peffer N, Rowe A, Baribaud F, Bansal AT, Lutter  
47 R, Sousa AR, Corfield J, Pandis I, Bakke PS, Caruso M, Chanez P, Dahlén S-E, Fleming  
48 LJ, Fowler SJ, Horvath I, Krug N, Montuschi P, Sanak M, Sandstrom T, Shaw DE, Singer  
49 F, Sterk PJ, Roberts G, Adcock IM, Djukanovic R, Auffray C, Chung KF, et al. U-BIOPRED  
50 clinical adult asthma clusters linked to a subset of sputum omics. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
51 *Immunol.* 2017; 139: 1797–1807.  
52
- 53 88. Longo C, Bartlett G, Schuster T, Ducharme FM, MacGibbon B, Barnett TA. The obese-  
54 asthma phenotype in children: An exacerbating situation? *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
55 2018; 141: 1239-1249.e4.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 89. Morjaria JB, Rigby AS, Morice AH. Asthma phenotypes: do cough and wheeze predict  
4 exacerbations in persistent asthma? *Eur. Respir. J.* 2017; 50.  
5  
6 90. Ghebre MA, Pang PH, Diver S, Desai D, Bafadhel M, Haldar K, Keadze T, Cohen S,  
7 Newbold P, Rapley L, Woods J, Rugman P, Pavord ID, Johnston SL, Barer M, May RD,  
8 Brightling CE. Biological exacerbation clusters demonstrate asthma and chronic  
9 obstructive pulmonary disease overlap with distinct mediator and microbiome  
10 profiles. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2018; 141: 2027-2036.e12.  
11  
12 91. Fricker M, Gibson PG, Powell H, Simpson JL, Yang IA, Upham JW, Reynolds PN, Hodge  
13 S, James AL, Jenkins C, Peters MJ, Marks GB, Baraket M, Baines KJ. A sputum 6-gene  
14 signature predicts future exacerbations of poorly controlled asthma. *J. Allergy Clin.*  
15 *Immunol.* 2019; .  
16  
17 92. Rothenberg ME, Hogan SP. The eosinophil. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 2006; 24: 147–174.  
18  
19 93. Doshi V, Shenoy S, Ganesh A, Lankala S, Henkle J. Near Fatal Asthma in an Inner City  
20 Population. *Am J Ther* 2016; 23: e1375–e1380.  
21  
22 94. Al-Dorzi HM, Al-Shammary HA, Al-Shareef SY, Tamim HM, Shammout K, Al Dawood A,  
23 Arabi YM. Risk factors, management and outcomes of patients admitted with near  
24 fatal asthma to a tertiary care hospital in Riyadh. *Ann Thorac Med* 2014; 9: 33–38.  
25  
26 95. Newth CJL, Meert KL, Clark AE, Moler FW, Zuppa AF, Berg RA, Pollack MM, Sward KA,  
27 Berger JT, Wessel DL, Harrison RE, Reardon J, Carcillo JA, Shanley TP, Holubkov R,  
28 Dean JM, Doctor A, Nicholson CE, Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child  
29 Health and Human Development Collaborative Pediatric Critical Care Research  
30 Network. Fatal and near-fatal asthma in children: the critical care perspective. *J.*  
31 *Pediatr.* 2012; 161: 214-221.e3.  
32  
33 96. Becker JM, Rogers J, Rossini G, Mirchandani H, D’Alonzo GE. Asthma deaths during  
34 sports: report of a 7-year experience. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2004; 113: 264–267.  
35  
36 97. Sunyer J, Basagaña X, Belmonte J, Antó JM. Effect of nitrogen dioxide and ozone on  
37 the risk of dying in patients with severe asthma. *Thorax* 2002; 57: 687–693.  
38  
39 98. Serrano-Pariente J, Rodrigo G, Fiz JA, Crespo A, Plaza V, High Risk Asthma Research  
40 Group. Identification and characterization of near-fatal asthma phenotypes by cluster  
41 analysis. *Allergy* 2015; 70: 1139–1147.  
42  
43 99. Dhuper S, Maggiore D, Chung V, Shim C. Profile of near-fatal asthma in an inner-city  
44 hospital. *Chest* 2003; 124: 1880–1884.  
45  
46 100. Schatz M, Hsu J-WY, Zeiger RS, Chen W, Dorenbaum A, Chipps BE, Haselkorn T.  
47 Phenotypes determined by cluster analysis in severe or difficult-to-treat asthma. *J.*  
48 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 133: 1549–1556.  
49  
50 101. D’Amato G, Liccardi G, D’Amato M, Holgate S. Environmental risk factors and allergic  
51 bronchial asthma. *Clin. Exp. Allergy* 2005; 35: 1113–1124.  
52  
53 102. Boulet L-P, Vervloet D, Magar Y, Foster JM. Adherence: the goal to control asthma.  
54 *Clin. Chest Med.* 2012; 33: 405–417.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 103. Williams LK, Peterson EL, Wells K, Ahmedani BK, Kumar R, Burchard EG, Chowdhry  
4 VK, Favro D, Lanfear DE, Pladevall M. Quantifying the proportion of severe asthma  
5 exacerbations attributable to inhaled corticosteroid nonadherence. *Journal of Allergy  
6 and Clinical Immunology* 2011; 128: 1185-1191.e2.  
7  
8 104. Hasegawa K, Brenner BE, Clark S, Camargo CA. Emergency department visits for acute  
9 asthma by adults who ran out of their inhaled medications. *Allergy and Asthma  
10 Proceedings* 2014; 35: 268–268.  
11  
12 105. Usmani OS, Lavorini F, Marshall J, Dunlop WCN, Heron L, Farrington E, Dekhuijzen R.  
13 Critical inhaler errors in asthma and COPD: a systematic review of impact on health  
14 outcomes. *Respir. Res.* 2018; 19: 10.  
15  
16 106. Björnsdóttir US, Gizurarson S, Sabale U. Potential negative consequences of non-  
17 consented switch of inhaled medications and devices in asthma patients. *Int. J. Clin.  
18 Pract.* 2013; 67: 904–910.  
19  
20 107. Serrano J. Alexithymia: a relevant psychological variable in near-fatal asthma.  
21 *European Respiratory Journal* 2006; 28: 296–302.  
22  
23 108. Halimi L, Pry R, Pithon G, Godard P, Varrin M, Chanez P. Severe asthma and  
24 adherence to peak flow monitoring: longitudinal assessment of psychological aspects.  
25 *J Psychosom Res* 2010; 69: 331–340.  
26  
27 109. Singh AK. Sex Differences Among Adults Presenting to the Emergency Department  
28 With Acute Asthma. *Archives of Internal Medicine* 1999; 159: 1237.  
29  
30 110. Zein JG, Erzurum SC. Asthma is Different in Women. *Current Allergy and Asthma  
31 Reports* [Internet] 2015 [cited 2017 Jul 24]; 15 Available from:  
32 <http://link.springer.com/10.1007/s11882-015-0528-y>.  
33  
34 111. Chandra D, Clark S, Camargo CA. Race/Ethnicity Differences in the Inpatient  
35 Management of Acute Asthma in the United States. *Chest* 2009; 135: 1527–1534.  
36  
37 112. El-Ekiaby A, Brianas L, Skowronski ME, Coreno AJ, Galan G, Kaeberlein FJ, Seitz RE,  
38 Villaba KD, Dickey-White H, McFadden ER. Impact of Race on the Severity of Acute  
39 Episodes of Asthma and Adrenergic Responsiveness. *American Journal of Respiratory  
40 and Critical Care Medicine* 2006; 174: 508–513.  
41  
42 113. De Simoni A, Horne R, Fleming L, Bush A, Griffiths C. What do adolescents with  
43 asthma really think about adherence to inhalers? Insights from a qualitative analysis  
44 of a UK online forum. *BMJ Open* 2017; 7: e015245.  
45  
46 114. Del Giacco SR, Cappai A, Gambula L, Cabras S, Perra S, Manconi PE, Carpiello B,  
47 Pinna F. The asthma-anxiety connection. *Respir Med* 2016; 120: 44–53.  
48  
49 115. Ciprandi G, Schiavetti I, Rindone E, Ricciardolo FLM. The impact of anxiety and  
50 depression on outpatients with asthma. *Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 2015; 115:  
51 408–414.  
52  
53 116. Bardin PG, Price D, Chanez P, Humbert M, Bourdin A. Managing asthma in the era of  
54 biological therapies. *Lancet Respir Med* 2017; 5: 376–378.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 117. Cea-Calvo L, Carmona L, Calvo-Alén J. The Challenge of Assessing Adherence to  
4 Subcutaneous Biological Drugs in Immune-Mediated Inflammatory Diseases. Letter to  
5 the Editor Regarding Michetti P, Weinman J, Mrowietz U, et al. *Adv Ther*  
6 (2017);34:91–108. doi:10.1007/s12325-016-0441-3. *Adv Ther* 2017; 34: 2173–2176.  
7
- 8 118. Poureslami I, Shum J, Lester RT, Tavakoli H, Dorscheid DR, FitzGerald JM. A pilot  
9 randomized controlled trial on the impact of text messaging check-ins and a web-  
10 based asthma action plan versus a written action plan on asthma exacerbations. *J*  
11 *Asthma* 2018; : 1–13.  
12
- 13 119. Chan AHY, Stewart AW, Harrison J, Camargo CA, Black PN, Mitchell EA. The effect of  
14 an electronic monitoring device with audiovisual reminder function on adherence to  
15 inhaled corticosteroids and school attendance in children with asthma: a randomised  
16 controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 210–219.  
17
- 18 120. Foster JM, Usherwood T, Smith L, Sawyer SM, Xuan W, Rand CS, Reddel HK. Inhaler  
19 reminders improve adherence with controller treatment in primary care patients with  
20 asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 134: 1260-1268.e3.  
21
- 22 121. James KM, Peebles RS, Hartert TV. Response to infections in patients with asthma and  
23 atopic disease: an epiphenomenon or reflection of host susceptibility? *J. Allergy Clin.*  
24 *Immunol.* 2012; 130: 343–351.  
25
- 26 122. Jackson DJ, Gangnon RE, Evans MD, Roberg KA, Anderson EL, Pappas TE, Printz MC,  
27 Lee W-M, Shult PA, Reisdorf E, Carlson-Dakes KT, Salazar LP, DaSilva DF, Tisler CJ,  
28 Gern JE, Lemanske RF. Wheezing rhinovirus illnesses in early life predict asthma  
29 development in high-risk children. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.* 2008; 178: 667–672.  
30
- 31 123. Kusel MMH, de Klerk NH, Keadze T, Vohma V, Holt PG, Johnston SL, Sly PD. Early-life  
32 respiratory viral infections, atopic sensitization, and risk of subsequent development  
33 of persistent asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2007; 119: 1105–1110.  
34
- 35 124. Carroll WD, Lenney W, Child F, Strange RC, Jones PW, Whyte MK, Primhak RA, Fryer  
36 AA. Asthma severity and atopy: how clear is the relationship? *Arch. Dis. Child.* 2006;  
37 91: 405–409.  
38
- 39 125. Teach SJ, Gill MA, Togias A, Sorkness CA, Arbes SJ, Calatroni A, Wildfire JJ, Gergen PJ,  
40 Cohen RT, Pongracic JA, Kerckmar CM, Khurana Hershey GK, Gruchalla RS, Liu AH,  
41 Zoratti EM, Kattan M, Grindle KA, Gern JE, Busse WW, Szeffler SJ. Preseasonal  
42 treatment with either omalizumab or an inhaled corticosteroid boost to prevent fall  
43 asthma exacerbations. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2015; 136: 1476–1485.  
44
- 45 126. Corne JM, Marshall C, Smith S, Schreiber J, Sanderson G, Holgate ST, Johnston SL.  
46 Frequency, severity, and duration of rhinovirus infections in asthmatic and non-  
47 asthmatic individuals: a longitudinal cohort study. *Lancet* 2002; 359: 831–834.  
48
- 49 127. Bochkov YA, Watters K, Ashraf S, Griggs TF, Devries MK, Jackson DJ, Palmenberg AC,  
50 Gern JE. Cadherin-related family member 3, a childhood asthma susceptibility gene  
51 product, mediates rhinovirus C binding and replication. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*  
52 2015; 112: 5485–5490.  
53
- 54 128. Ducharme FM, Zemek R, Chauhan BF, Gravel J, Chalut D, Poonai N, Guertin M-C,  
55 Quach C, Blondeau L, Laberge S, DOORWAY research group of the Pediatric  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 Emergency Research in Canada (PERC) network. Factors associated with failure of  
4 emergency department management in children with acute moderate or severe  
5 asthma: a prospective, multicentre, cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 990–  
6 998.  
7
- 8 129. Wark PAB, Johnston SL, Bucchieri F, Powell R, Puddicombe S, Laza-Stanca V, Holgate  
9 ST, Davies DE. Asthmatic bronchial epithelial cells have a deficient innate immune  
10 response to infection with rhinovirus. *J. Exp. Med.* 2005; 201: 937–947.  
11
- 12 130. Baraldo S, Contoli M, Bazzan E, Turato G, Padovani A, Marku B, Calabrese F, Caramori  
13 G, Ballarin A, Snijders D, Barbato A, Saetta M, Papi A. Deficient antiviral immune  
14 responses in childhood: distinct roles of atopy and asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.*  
15 2012; 130: 1307–1314.  
16
- 17 131. Contoli M, Message SD, Laza-Stanca V, Edwards MR, Wark PAB, Bartlett NW, Kebabdz  
18 T, Mallia P, Stanciu LA, Parker HL, Slater L, Lewis-Antes A, Kon OM, Holgate ST, Davies  
19 DE, Kotenko SV, Papi A, Johnston SL. Role of deficient type III interferon-lambda  
20 production in asthma exacerbations. *Nat. Med.* 2006; 12: 1023–1026.  
21
- 22 132. Glanville N, Johnston SL. Challenges in developing a cross-serotype rhinovirus vaccine.  
23 *Curr Opin Virol* 2015; 11: 83–88.  
24
- 25 133. Djukanović R, Harrison T, Johnston SL, Gabbay F, Wark P, Thomson NC, Niven R, Singh  
26 D, Reddel HK, Davies DE, Marsden R, Boxall C, Dudley S, Plagnol V, Holgate ST, Monk  
27 P, INTERCIA Study Group. The effect of inhaled IFN- $\beta$  on worsening of asthma  
28 symptoms caused by viral infections. A randomized trial. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*  
29 2014; 190: 145–154.  
30
- 31 134. Henneberger PK, Mirabelli MC, Kogevinas M, Anto JM, Plana E, Dahlman-Hoglund A,  
32 Jarvis DL, Kromhout H, Lillienberg L, Norback D, Olivieri M, Radon K, Toren K, Urrutia  
33 I, Villani S, Zock JP. The occupational contribution to severe exacerbation of asthma.  
34 *European Respiratory Journal* 2010; 36: 743–750.  
35
- 36 135. Jie Y, Isa ZM, Jie X, Ju ZL, Ismail NH. Urban vs. Rural Factors That Affect Adult Asthma.  
37 In: Whitacre DM, editor. *Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*  
38 *Volume 226* [Internet] New York, NY: Springer New York; 2013 [cited 2017 Jul 26]. p.  
39 33–63 Available from: [http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-1-4614-6898-1\\_2](http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-1-4614-6898-1_2).  
40  
41
- 42 136. Spitzer WO, Suissa S, Ernst P, Horwitz RI, Habbick B, Cockcroft D, Boivin JF, McNutt M,  
43 Buist AS, Rebuck AS. The use of beta-agonists and the risk of death and near death  
44 from asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 1992; 326: 501–506.  
45
- 46 137. van Schayck CP, Bijl-Hofland ID, Cloosterman SGM, Folgering HTM, van der Elshout  
47 FJJ, Van Weel C. Potential masking effect on dyspnoea perception by short- and long-  
48 acting beta2-agonists in asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 2002; 19: 240–245.  
49
- 50 138. Cockcroft DW, Sears MR. Are inhaled longacting  $\beta$ 2 agonists detrimental to asthma?  
51 *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: 339–346.  
52
- 53 139. Nelson HS, Weiss ST, Bleecker ER, Yancey SW, Dorinsky PM, SMART Study Group. The  
54 Salmeterol Multicenter Asthma Research Trial: a comparison of usual  
55 pharmacotherapy for asthma or usual pharmacotherapy plus salmeterol. *Chest* 2006;  
56 129: 15–26.  
57



- 1  
2  
3 140. Drazen JM, Israel E, Boushey HA, Chinchilli VM, Fahy JV, Fish JE, Lazarus SC, Lemanske  
4 RF, Martin RJ, Peters SP, Sorkness C, Szeffler SJ. Comparison of regularly scheduled  
5 with as-needed use of albuterol in mild asthma. Asthma Clinical Research Network. *N.*  
6 *Engl. J. Med.* 1996; 335: 841–847.  
7  
8 141. Suissa S, Blais L, Ernst P. Patterns of increasing beta-agonist use and the risk of fatal  
9 or near-fatal asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 1994; 7: 1602–1609.  
10  
11 142. Ritchie AI, Singanayagam A, Wiater E, Edwards MR, Montminy M, Johnston SL.  $\beta$ 2-  
12 Agonists Enhance Asthma-Relevant Inflammatory Mediators in Human Airway  
13 Epithelial Cells. *Am. J. Respir. Cell Mol. Biol.* 2018; 58: 128–132.  
14  
15 143. Kim D, Cho S, Woo JA, Liggett SB. A CREB-mediated increase in miRNA let-7f during  
16 prolonged  $\beta$ -agonist exposure: a novel mechanism of  $\beta$ 2-adrenergic receptor down-  
17 regulation in airway smooth muscle. *FASEB J.* 2018; 32: 3680–3688.  
18  
19 144. Reddel H, Ware S, Marks G, Salome C, Jenkins C, Woolcock A. Differences between  
20 asthma exacerbations and poor asthma control. *Lancet* 1999; 353: 364–369.  
21  
22 145. Castillo JR, Peters SP, Busse WW. Asthma Exacerbations: Pathogenesis, Prevention,  
23 and Treatment. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2017; 5: 918–927.  
24  
25 146. Shim CS, Williams MH. Evaluation of the severity of asthma: patients versus  
26 physicians. *Am. J. Med.* 1980; 68: 11–13.  
27  
28 147. Carruthers DM, Harrison BD. Arterial blood gas analysis or oxygen saturation in the  
29 assessment of acute asthma? *Thorax* 1995; 50: 186–188.  
30  
31 148. Nowak RM, Tomlanovich MC, Sarkar DD, Kvale PA, Anderson JA. Arterial blood gases  
32 and pulmonary function testing in acute bronchial asthma. Predicting patient  
33 outcomes. *JAMA* 1983; 249: 2043–2046.  
34  
35 149. White CS, Cole RP, Lubetsky HW, Austin JH. Acute asthma. Admission chest  
36 radiography in hospitalized adult patients. *Chest* 1991; 100: 14–16.  
37  
38 150. Perrin K, Wijesinghe M, Healy B, Wadsworth K, Bowditch R, Bibby S, Baker T,  
39 Weatherall M, Beasley R. Randomised controlled trial of high concentration versus  
40 titrated oxygen therapy in severe exacerbations of asthma. *Thorax* 2011; 66: 937–  
41 941.  
42  
43 151. Rodrigo GJ. Oxygen treatment for acute severe asthma. Oxygen saturation may help  
44 identify patients in need of intensive management. *BMJ* 2001; 323: 1069.  
45  
46 152. Rodrigo GJ, Rodriguez Verde M, Peregalli V, Rodrigo C. Effects of short-term 28% and  
47 100% oxygen on PaCO<sub>2</sub> and peak expiratory flow rate in acute asthma: a randomized  
48 trial. *Chest* 2003; 124: 1312–1317.  
49  
50 153. Cates CJ, Welsh EJ, Rowe BH. Holding chambers (spacers) versus nebulisers for beta-  
51 agonist treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; : CD000052.  
52  
53 154. Newman KB, Milne S, Hamilton C, Hall K. A comparison of albuterol administered by  
54 metered-dose inhaler and spacer with albuterol by nebulizer in adults presenting to  
55 an urban emergency department with acute asthma. *Chest* 2002; 121: 1036–1041.  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 155. Camargo CA, Spooner CH, Rowe BH. Continuous versus intermittent beta-agonists in  
4 the treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003; : CD001115.  
5  
6 156. Rodrigo GJ, Rodrigo C. Continuous vs intermittent beta-agonists in the treatment of  
7 acute adult asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Chest* 2002; 122: 160–  
8 165.  
9  
10 157. Shrestha M, Bidadi K, Gourlay S, Hayes J. Continuous vs intermittent albuterol, at high  
11 and low doses, in the treatment of severe acute asthma in adults. *Chest* 1996; 110:  
12 42–47.  
13  
14 158. Travers AH, Milan SJ, Jones AP, Camargo CA, Rowe BH. Addition of intravenous  
15 beta(2)-agonists to inhaled beta(2)-agonists for acute asthma. *Cochrane Database*  
16 *Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD010179.  
17  
18 159. Griffiths B, Ducharme FM. Combined inhaled anticholinergics and short-acting beta2-  
19 agonists for initial treatment of acute asthma in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*  
20 2013; : CD000060.  
21  
22 160. Rodrigo G, Rodrigo C, Burschtin O. A meta-analysis of the effects of ipratropium  
23 bromide in adults with acute asthma. *Am. J. Med.* 1999; 107: 363–370.  
24  
25 161. Stoodley RG, Aaron SD, Dales RE. The role of ipratropium bromide in the emergency  
26 management of acute asthma exacerbation: a metaanalysis of randomized clinical  
27 trials. *Ann Emerg Med* 1999; 34: 8–18.  
28  
29 162. Manser R, Reid D, Abramson M. Corticosteroids for acute severe asthma in  
30 hospitalised patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD001740.  
31  
32 163. Rowe BH, Spooner CH, Ducharme FM, Bretzlaff JA, Bota GW. Corticosteroids for  
33 preventing relapse following acute exacerbations of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst*  
34 *Rev* 2007; : CD000195.  
35  
36 164. Rowe BH, Spooner C, Ducharme FM, Bretzlaff JA, Bota GW. Early emergency  
37 department treatment of acute asthma with systemic corticosteroids. *Cochrane*  
38 *Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD002178.  
39  
40 165. Marquette CH, Stach B, Cardot E, Bervar JF, Saulnier F, Lafitte JJ, Goldstein P, Wallaert  
41 B, Tonnel AB. High-dose and low-dose systemic corticosteroids are equally efficient in  
42 acute severe asthma. *Eur. Respir. J.* 1995; 8: 22–27.  
43  
44 166. Harrison BD, Stokes TC, Hart GJ, Vaughan DA, Ali NJ, Robinson AA. Need for  
45 intravenous hydrocortisone in addition to oral prednisolone in patients admitted to  
46 hospital with severe asthma without ventilatory failure. *Lancet* 1986; 1: 181–184.  
47  
48 167. Ratto D, Alfaro C, Sipsy J, Glovsky MM, Sharma OP. Are intravenous corticosteroids  
49 required in status asthmaticus? *JAMA* 1988; 260: 527–529.  
50  
51 168. Jones AM, Munavvar M, Vail A, Aldridge RE, Hopkinson L, Rayner C, O'Driscoll BR.  
52 Prospective, placebo-controlled trial of 5 vs 10 days of oral prednisolone in acute  
53 adult asthma. *Respir Med* 2002; 96: 950–954.  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 169. O'Driscoll BR, Kalra S, Wilson M, Pickering CA, Carroll KB, Woodcock AA. Double-blind  
4 trial of steroid tapering in acute asthma. *Lancet* 1993; 341: 324–327.  
5  
6 170. Edmonds ML, Milan SJ, Camargo CA, Pollack CV, Rowe BH. Early use of inhaled  
7 corticosteroids in the emergency department treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane*  
8 *Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD002308.  
9  
10 171. Kew KM, Kirtchuk L, Michell CI. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating adults  
11 with acute asthma in the emergency department. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; :  
12 CD010909.  
13  
14 172. Rowe BH, Bretzlaff JA, Bourdon C, Bota GW, Camargo CA. Intravenous magnesium  
15 sulfate treatment for acute asthma in the emergency department: a systematic  
16 review of the literature. *Ann Emerg Med* 2000; 36: 181–190.  
17  
18 173. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR-3):  
19 Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma-Summary Report 2007. *J.*  
20 *Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2007; 120: S94-138.  
21  
22 174. Charriot J, Volpato M, Sueh C, Boissin C, Gamez AS, Vachier I, Halimi L, Chanez P,  
23 Bourdin A. Asthma: treatment and prevention of pulmonary exacerbations. In: Burgel  
24 P-R, Contoli M, López-Campos JL, editors. *Acute Exacerbations of Pulmonary Diseases*  
25 [Internet] European Respiratory Society; 2017 [cited 2018 Sep 21]. p. 129–  
26 146 Available from:  
27 <http://erspublications.com/lookup/doi/10.1183/2312508X.10016416>.  
28  
29 175. França-Pinto A, Mendes FAR, de Carvalho-Pinto RM, Agondi RC, Cukier A, Stelmach R,  
30 Saraiva-Romanholo BM, Kalil J, Martins MA, Giavina-Bianchi P, Carvalho CRF. Aerobic  
31 training decreases bronchial hyperresponsiveness and systemic inflammation in  
32 patients with moderate or severe asthma: a randomised controlled trial. *Thorax*  
33 2015; 70: 732–739.  
34  
35 176. Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma (EPR-3) | National Heart,  
36 Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
37 [https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/guidelines-for-diagnosis-management-of-](https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/guidelines-for-diagnosis-management-of-asthma)  
38 [asthma](https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/guidelines-for-diagnosis-management-of-asthma).  
39  
40 177. BTS/SIGN British guideline on the management of asthma | British Thoracic Society |  
41 Better lung health for all [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
42 [https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/standards-of-care/guidelines/btssign-british-](https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/standards-of-care/guidelines/btssign-british-guideline-on-the-management-of-asthma/)  
43 [guideline-on-the-management-of-asthma/](https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/standards-of-care/guidelines/btssign-british-guideline-on-the-management-of-asthma/).  
44  
45 178. McKeever T, Mortimer K, Wilson A, Walker S, Brightling C, Skeggs A, Pavord I, Price D,  
46 Duley L, Thomas M, Bradshaw L, Higgins B, Haydock R, Mitchell E, Devereux G,  
47 Harrison T. Quadrupling Inhaled Glucocorticoid Dose to Abort Asthma Exacerbations.  
48 *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 902–910.  
49  
50 179. Volmer T, Effenberger T, Trautner C, Buhl R. Consequences of long-term OCS therapy  
51 and its side effects in severe asthma in adults – A focused review of the impact data  
52 in the literature. *European Respiratory Journal* 2018; : 1800703.  
53  
54 180. Sweeney J, Brightling CE, Menzies-Gow A, Niven R, Patterson CC, Heaney LG, British  
55 Thoracic Society Difficult Asthma Network. Clinical management and outcome of  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 refractory asthma in the UK from the British Thoracic Society Difficult Asthma  
4 Registry. *Thorax* 2012; 67: 754–756.  
5
- 6 181. Mancinelli L, Navarro L, Sharma OP. Intramuscular high-dose triamcinolone acetonide  
7 in the treatment of severe chronic asthma. *West. J. Med.* 1997; 167: 322–329.  
8
- 9 182. Pavord ID, Brightling CE, Woltmann G, Wardlaw AJ. Non-eosinophilic corticosteroid  
10 unresponsive asthma. *Lancet* 1999; 353: 2213–2214.  
11
- 12 183. Sputum eosinophilia and short-term response to prednisolone in chronic obstructive  
13 pulmonary disease: a randomised controlled trial. - PubMed - NCBI [Internet]. [cited  
14 2018 Sep 21]. Available from: [https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih-](https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih-gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531)  
15 [gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531](https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih-gov.gate2.inist.fr/pubmed/11081531).  
16
- 17 184. Pratter MR, Brightling CE, Boulet LP, Irwin RS. An empiric integrative approach to the  
18 management of cough: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest* 2006;  
19 129: 222S-231S.  
20
- 21 185. Chlumský J, Striz I, Terl M, Vondracek J. Strategy aimed at reduction of sputum  
22 eosinophils decreases exacerbation rate in patients with asthma. *J. Int. Med. Res.*  
23 2006; 34: 129–139.  
24
- 25 186. O’Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, Bateman ED, Barnes PJ, Zhong N, Keen C, Jorup C,  
26 Lamarca R, Ivanov S, Reddel HK. Inhaled Combined Budesonide-Formoterol as  
27 Needed in Mild Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 1865–1876.  
28
- 29 187. Bateman ED, Reddel HK, O’Byrne PM, Barnes PJ, Zhong N, Keen C, Jorup C, Lamarca R,  
30 Siwek-Posluszna A, FitzGerald JM. As-Needed Budesonide-Formoterol versus  
31 Maintenance Budesonide in Mild Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018; 378: 1877–1887.  
32
- 33 188. Beasley R, Holliday M, Reddel HK, Braithwaite I, Ebmeier S, Hancox RJ, Harrison T,  
34 Houghton C, Oldfield K, Papi A, Pavord ID, Williams M, Weatherall M, Novel START  
35 Study Team. Controlled Trial of Budesonide-Formoterol as Needed for Mild Asthma.  
36 *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2019; 380: 2020–2030.  
37
- 38 189. FDA Removes Boxed Warning from Long-Acting Beta Agonists (LABAs) and Inhaled  
39 Corticosteroids (ICS) | NAMDRG [Internet]. [cited 2018 Oct 19]. Available from:  
40 [https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-](https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics)  
41 [agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics](https://www.namdr.org/posts/fda-removes-boxed-warning-long-acting-beta-agonists-labas-and-inhaled-corticosteroids-ics).  
42
- 43 190. Kerstjens HAM, Engel M, Dahl R, Paggiaro P, Beck E, Vandewalker M, Sigmund R,  
44 Seibold W, Moroni-Zentgraf P, Bateman ED. Tiotropium in asthma poorly controlled  
45 with standard combination therapy. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2012; 367: 1198–1207.  
46
- 47 191. Anderson DE, Kew KM, Boyter AC. Long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA) added  
48 to inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) versus the same dose of ICS alone for adults with  
49 asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; : CD011397.  
50
- 51 192. Miligkos M, Bannuru RR, Alkofide H, Kher SR, Schmid CH, Balk EM. Leukotriene-  
52 receptor antagonists versus placebo in the treatment of asthma in adults and  
53 adolescents: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann. Intern. Med.* 2015; 163:  
54 756–767.  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 193. Nie H, Zhang G, Liu M, Ding X, Huang Y, Hu S. Efficacy of theophylline plus  
4 salmeterol/fluticasone propionate combination therapy in patients with asthma.  
5 *Respir Med* 2013; 107: 347–354.  
6
- 7 194. Gibson PG, Yang IA, Upham JW, Reynolds PN, Hodge S, James AL, Jenkins C, Peters  
8 MJ, Marks GB, Baraket M, Powell H, Taylor SL, Leong LEX, Rogers GB, Simpson JL.  
9 Effect of azithromycin on asthma exacerbations and quality of life in adults with  
10 persistent uncontrolled asthma (AMAZES): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-  
11 controlled trial. *Lancet* 2017; 390: 659–668.  
12
- 13 195. Brusselle GG, Vanderstichele C, Jordens P, Deman R, Slabbynck H, Ringoet V,  
14 Verleden G, Demedts IK, Verhamme K, Delporte A, Demeyere B, Claeys G, Boelens J,  
15 Padalko E, Verschakelen J, Van Maele G, Deschepper E, Joos GFP. Azithromycin for  
16 prevention of exacerbations in severe asthma (AZISAST): a multicentre randomised  
17 double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 322–329.  
18
- 19 196. Agbetile J, Bourne M, Fairs A, Hargadon B, Desai D, Broad C, Morley J, Bradding P,  
20 Brightling CE, Green RH, Haldar P, Pashley CH, Pavord ID, Wardlaw AJ. Effectiveness  
21 of voriconazole in the treatment of *Aspergillus fumigatus*-associated asthma (EVITA3  
22 study). *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 134: 33–39.  
23
- 24 197. Evans DJ, Cullinan P, Geddes DM. Cyclosporin as an oral corticosteroid sparing agent  
25 in stable asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; : CD002993.  
26
- 27 198. Davies H, Olson L, Gibson P. Methotrexate as a steroid sparing agent for asthma in  
28 adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2000; : CD000391.  
29
- 30 199. Woodcock A, Forster L, Matthews E, Martin J, Letley L, Vickers M, Britton J, Strachan  
31 D, Howarth P, Altmann D, Frost C, Custovic A, Medical Research Council General  
32 Practice Research Framework. Control of exposure to mite allergen and allergen-  
33 impermeable bed covers for adults with asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2003; 349: 225–236.  
34
- 35 200. Normansell R, Kew KM, Bridgman A-L. Sublingual immunotherapy for asthma.  
36 *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; : CD011293.  
37
- 38 201. ISRCTN - ISRCTN15124178: SoMOSA: Study of mechanisms of action of omalizumab in  
39 severe asthma [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
40 <http://www.isrctn.com/ISRCTN15124178>.  
41
- 42 202. Laminar Airflow in Severe Asthma for Exacerbation Reduction - 48 Month Follow-up. -  
43 Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
44 <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02813811>.  
45
- 46 203. Normansell R, Walker S, Milan SJ, Walters EH, Nair P. Omalizumab for asthma in  
47 adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; : CD003559.  
48
- 49 204. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Hargadon B, Gupta S, Monteiro W, Sousa A, Marshall RP,  
50 Bradding P, Green RH, Wardlaw AJ, Pavord ID. Mepolizumab and exacerbations of  
51 refractory eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2009; 360: 973–984.  
52
- 53 205. Chupp GL, Bradford ES, Albers FC, Bratton DJ, Wang-Jairaj J, Nelsen LM, Trevor JL,  
54 Magnan A, Ten Brinke A. Efficacy of mepolizumab add-on therapy on health-related  
55 quality of life and markers of asthma control in severe eosinophilic asthma (MUSCA):  
56  
57

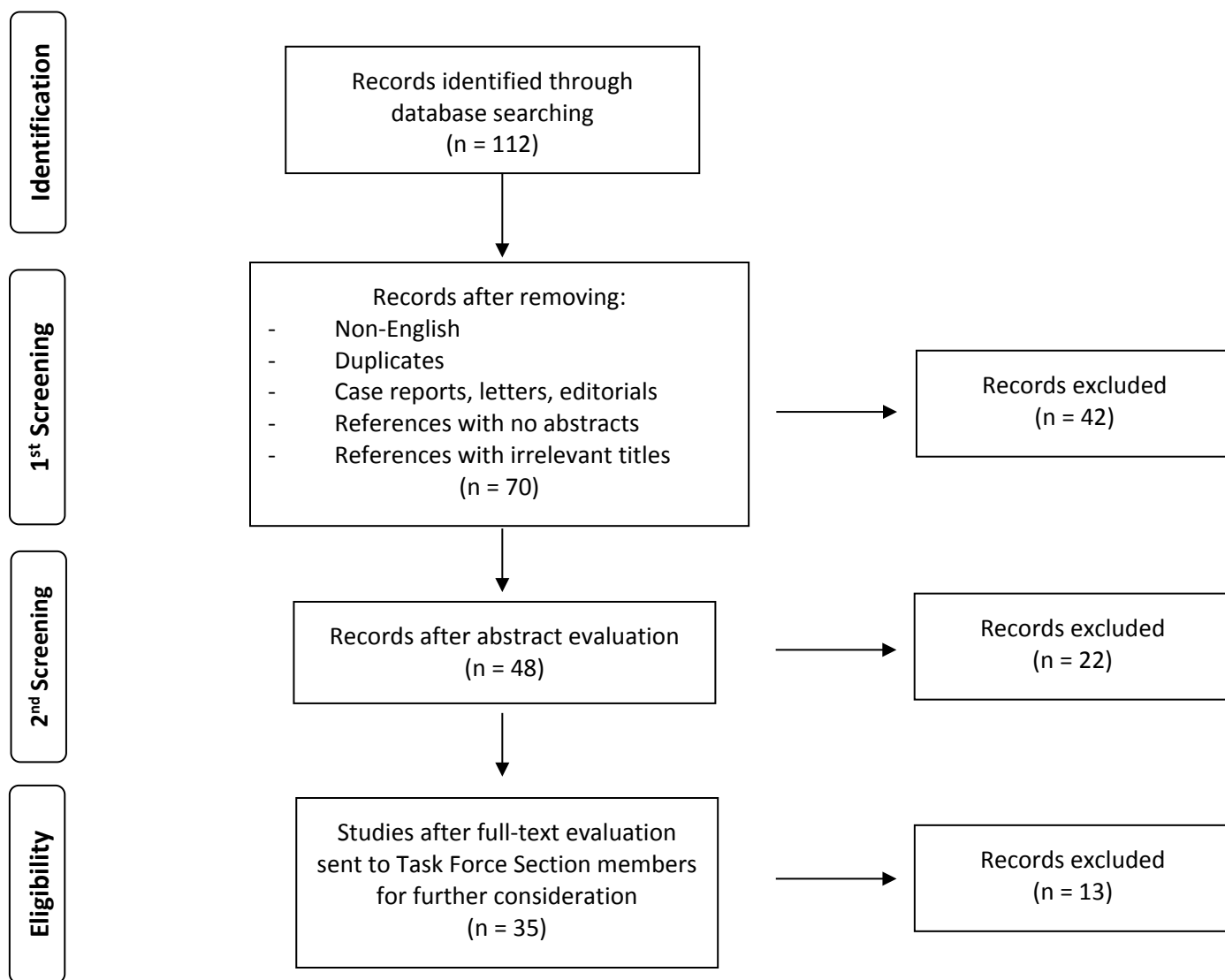
- 1  
2  
3 a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group, multicentre, phase  
4 3b trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2017; 5: 390–400.  
5
- 6 206. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
7 Pavord ID. Oral Glucocorticoid-Sparing Effect of Mepolizumab in Eosinophilic Asthma.  
8 *New England Journal of Medicine* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
9
- 10 207. Ortega HG, Yancey SW, Mayer B, Gunsoy NB, Keene ON, Bleecker ER, Brightling CE,  
11 Pavord ID. Severe eosinophilic asthma treated with mepolizumab stratified by  
12 baseline eosinophil thresholds: a secondary analysis of the DREAM and MENSA  
13 studies. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 549–556.  
14
- 15 208. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Singapuri A, Hargadon B, Gupta S, Monteiro W, Bradding P,  
16 Green RH, Wardlaw AJ, Ortega H, Pavord ID. Outcomes after cessation of  
17 mepolizumab therapy in severe eosinophilic asthma: a 12-month follow-up analysis.  
18 *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2014; 133: 921–923.  
19
- 20 209. Lugogo N, Domingo C, Chanez P, Leigh R, Gilson MJ, Price RG, Yancey SW, Ortega HG.  
21 Long-term Efficacy and Safety of Mepolizumab in Patients With Severe Eosinophilic  
22 Asthma: A Multi-center, Open-label, Phase IIIb Study. *Clin Ther* 2016; 38: 2058-  
23 2070.e1.  
24
- 25 210. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
26 Pavord ID, SIRIUS Investigators. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of mepolizumab in  
27 eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
28
- 29 211. Castro M, Zangrilli J, Wechsler ME, Bateman ED, Brusselle GG, Bardin P, Murphy K,  
30 Maspero JF, O'Brien C, Korn S. Reslizumab for inadequately controlled asthma with  
31 elevated blood eosinophil counts: results from two multicentre, parallel, double-  
32 blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3:  
33 355–366.  
34
- 35 212. Brusselle G, Canvin J, Weiss S, Sun SX, Buhl R. Stratification of eosinophilic asthma  
36 patients treated with reslizumab and GINA Step 4 or 5 therapy. *ERJ Open Res* 2017; 3.  
37
- 38 213. FitzGerald JM, Bleecker ER, Nair P, Korn S, Ohta K, Lommatzsch M, Ferguson GT,  
39 Busse WW, Barker P, Sproule S, Gilmartin G, Werkström V, Aurivillius M, Goldman M,  
40 CALIMA study investigators. Benralizumab, an anti-interleukin-5 receptor  $\alpha$   
41 monoclonal antibody, as add-on treatment for patients with severe, uncontrolled,  
42 eosinophilic asthma (CALIMA): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase  
43 3 trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 2128–2141.  
44
- 45 214. Nair P, Wenzel S, Rabe KF, Bourdin A, Lugogo NL, Kuna P, Barker P, Sproule S,  
46 Ponnarambil S, Goldman M, ZONDA Trial Investigators. Oral Glucocorticoid-Sparing  
47 Effect of Benralizumab in Severe Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2017; 376: 2448–2458.  
48
- 49 215. Goldman M, Hirsch I, Zangrilli JG, Newbold P, Xu X. The association between blood  
50 eosinophil count and benralizumab efficacy for patients with severe, uncontrolled  
51 asthma: subanalyses of the Phase III SIROCCO and CALIMA studies. *Curr Med Res Opin*  
52 2017; 33: 1605–1613.  
53
- 54 216. FitzGerald JM, Bleecker ER, Menzies-Gow A, Zangrilli JG, Hirsch I, Metcalfe P,  
55 Newbold P, Goldman M. Predictors of enhanced response with benralizumab for  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

- 1  
2  
3 patients with severe asthma: pooled analysis of the SIROCCO and CALIMA studies.  
4 *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 51–64.  
5
- 6 217. Wechsler ME, Laviolette M, Rubin AS, Fiterman J, Lapa e Silva JR, Shah PL, Fiss E,  
7 Olivenstein R, Thomson NC, Niven RM, Pavord ID, Simoff M, Hales JB, McEvoy C,  
8 Slebos D-J, Holmes M, Phillips MJ, Erzurum SC, Hanania NA, Sumino K, Kraft M, Cox G,  
9 Sterman DH, Hogarth K, Kline JN, Mansur AH, Louie BE, Leeds WM, Barbers RG, Austin  
10 JHM, et al. Bronchial thermoplasty: Long-term safety and effectiveness in patients  
11 with severe persistent asthma. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 2013; 132: 1295–1302.  
12
- 13 218. Wenzel S, Ford L, Pearlman D, Spector S, Sher L, Skobieranda F, Wang L, Kirkesseli S,  
14 Rocklin R, Bock B, Hamilton J, Ming JE, Radin A, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Graham N,  
15 Pirozzi G. Dupilumab in persistent asthma with elevated eosinophil levels. *N. Engl. J.*  
16 *Med.* 2013; 368: 2455–2466.  
17
- 18 219. Wenzel S, Castro M, Corren J, Maspero J, Wang L, Zhang B, Pirozzi G, Sutherland ER,  
19 Evans RR, Joish VN, Eckert L, Graham NMH, Stahl N, Yancopoulos GD, Louis-Tisserand  
20 M, Teper A. Dupilumab efficacy and safety in adults with uncontrolled persistent  
21 asthma despite use of medium-to-high-dose inhaled corticosteroids plus a long-acting  
22  $\beta$ 2 agonist: a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled pivotal phase 2b dose-  
23 ranging trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 31–44.  
24
- 25 220. Hanania NA, Korenblat P, Chapman KR, Bateman ED, Kopecky P, Paggiaro P,  
26 Yokoyama A, Olsson J, Gray S, Holweg CTJ, Eisner M, Asare C, Fischer SK, Peng K,  
27 Putnam WS, Matthews JG. Efficacy and safety of lebrikizumab in patients with  
28 uncontrolled asthma (LAVOLTA I and LAVOLTA II): replicate, phase 3, randomised,  
29 double-blind, placebo-controlled trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 781–796.  
30
- 31 221. Russell RJ, Chachi L, FitzGerald JM, Backer V, Olivenstein R, Titlestad IL, Ulrik CS,  
32 Harrison T, Singh D, Chaudhuri R, Leaker B, McGarvey L, Siddiqui S, Wang M,  
33 Braddock M, Nordenmark LH, Cohen D, Parikh H, Colice G, Brightling CE, MESOS study  
34 investigators. Effect of tralokinumab, an interleukin-13 neutralising monoclonal  
35 antibody, on eosinophilic airway inflammation in uncontrolled moderate-to-severe  
36 asthma (MESOS): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase  
37 2 trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 499–510.  
38
- 39 222. Corren J, Parnes JR, Wang L, Mo M, Roseti SL, Griffiths JM, van der Merwe R.  
40 Tezepelumab in Adults with Uncontrolled Asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2017; 377: 936–  
41 946.  
42
- 43 223. Gonem S, Berair R, Singapuri A, Hartley R, Laurencin MFM, Bacher G, Holzhauer B,  
44 Bourne M, Mistry V, Pavord ID, Mansur AH, Wardlaw AJ, Siddiqui SH, Kay RA,  
45 Brightling CE. Fevipiprant, a prostaglandin D2 receptor 2 antagonist, in patients with  
46 persistent eosinophilic asthma: a single-centre, randomised, double-blind, parallel-  
47 group, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2016; 4: 699–707.  
48
- 49 224. Efficacy and Safety Study of GSK3772847 in Subjects With Moderately Severe Asthma  
50 - Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018 Sep 21]. Available from:  
51 <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03207243>.  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60

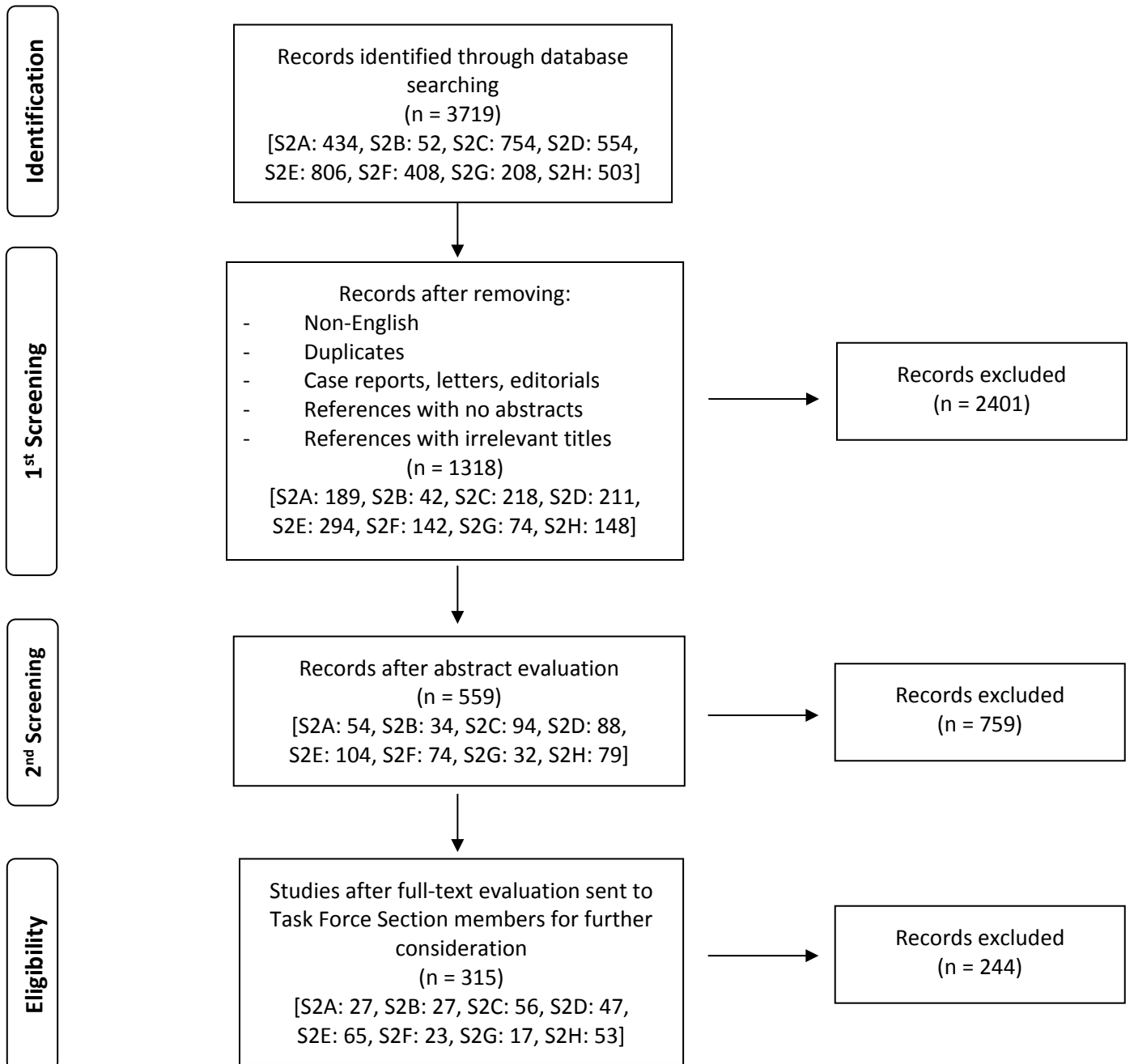
- 1  
2  
3 225. Study to Assess the Efficacy and Safety of CJM112 in Patients With Inadequately  
4 Controlled Severe Asthma - Full Text View - ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. [cited 2018  
5 Sep 21]. Available from: <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03299686>.  
6  
7 226. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, Prazma CM, Keene ON, Yancey SW, Ortega HG,  
8 Pavord ID, SIRIUS Investigators. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of mepolizumab in  
9 eosinophilic asthma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2014; 371: 1189–1197.  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60



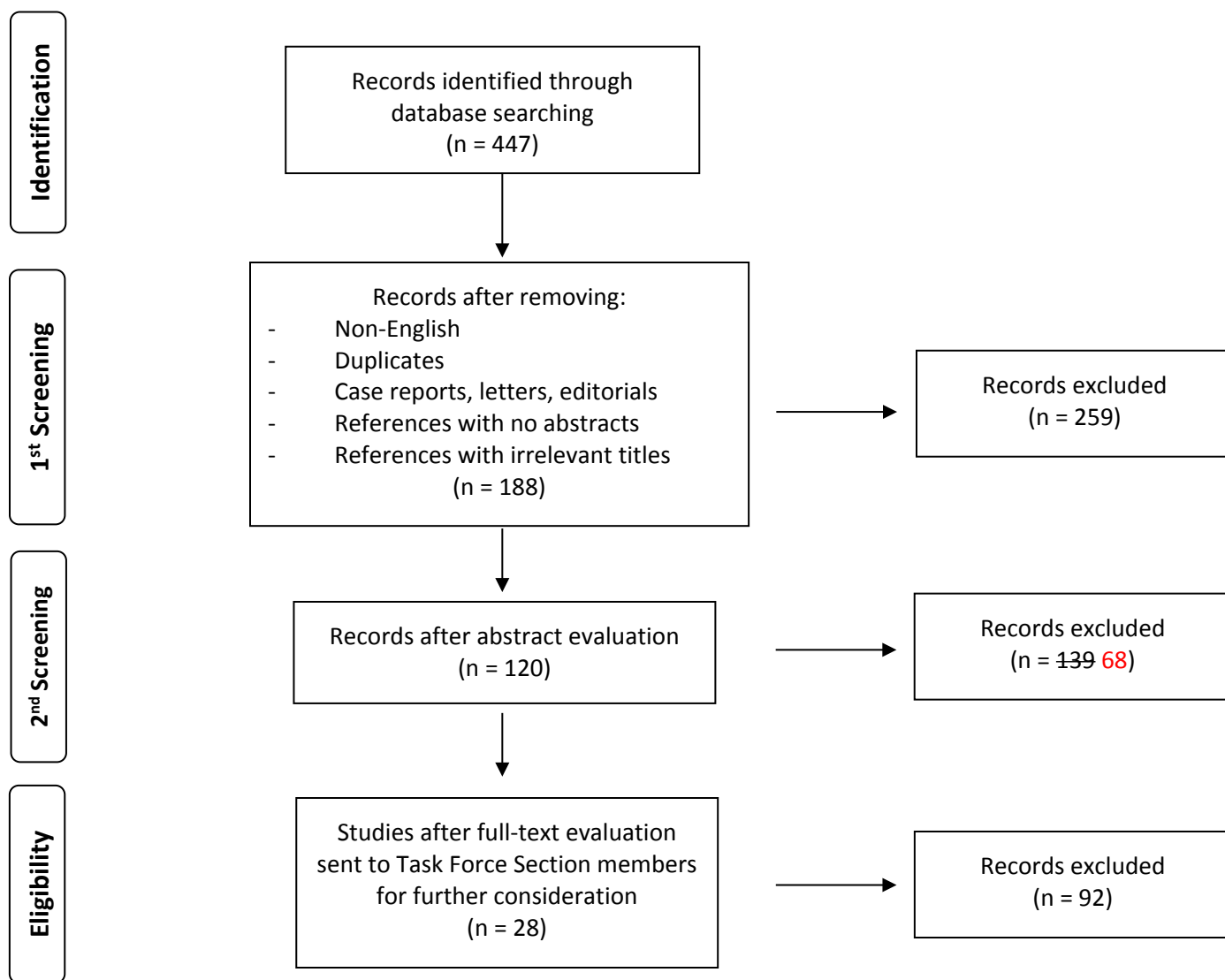
## FLOW CHART: SECTION 1



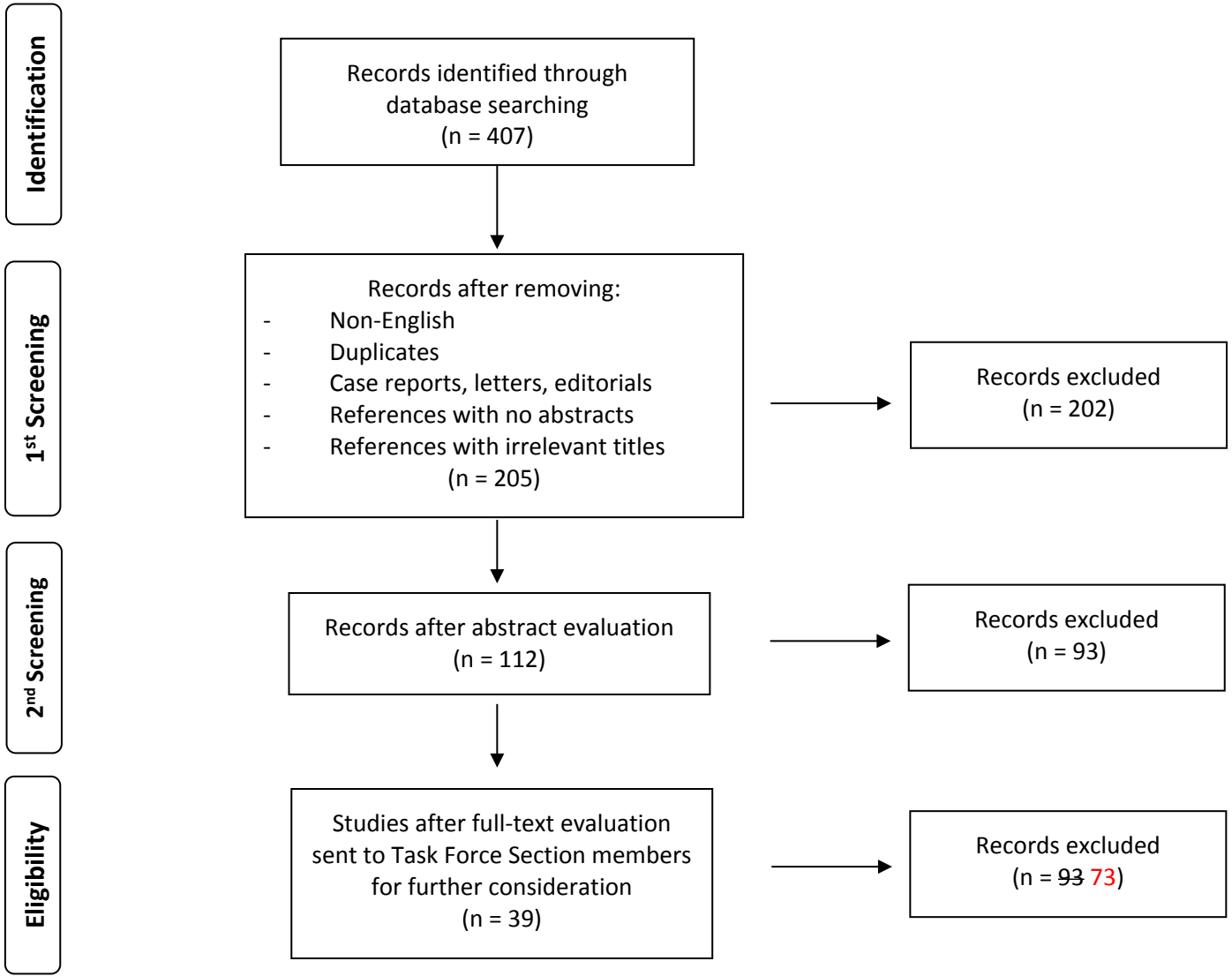
**FLOW CHART: SECTION 2 (Sections 2A to 2H)**



## FLOW CHART: SECTION 3



**FLOW CHART: SECTION 4**



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60